

Title 16: History, Humanities and Arts

Part 3: Historic Preservation Division

Part 3 Chapter 1: Policies for Implementation of the Antiquities Law of Mississippi

(Adopted by the Board of Trustees on January 15, 2010; Amended January 20, 2017; Amended January 24, 2020)

Rule 1.1 Board of Trustees.

Section 39-7-5 of the Antiquities Law of Mississippi assigns sole responsibility for administration of the Antiquities Law of Mississippi to the Board of Trustees (Board) of the Mississippi Department of Archives and History (MDAH).

In administering the Antiquities Law, the Board has the authority to designate publicly owned properties as Mississippi Landmarks, with or without the request of the public owner, and privately owned properties at the request of the owner. The Board also has the authority to issue permits for construction, demolition, excavation or ground disturbing activity, public improvement of any nature, or the transfer of public property to private ownership that affects Mississippi Landmark property and property that is eligible for Mississippi Landmark designation, as determined by MDAH.

In exercising its authority under the Antiquities Law, the Board will consider the recommendations of MDAH staff and written comments from public property owners and members of the public

Source: Miss. Code Ann. §§ 39-7-1, 39-7-3, 39-7-5, 39-7-7, 39-7-22 (1972).

Rule 1.2 Notices of Intent.

State agencies, counties, cities, and all their political division are required to submit a Notice of Intent with supporting documentation for all projects involving publicly owned property, including taking, alteration, damage, destruction, salvage, restoration, renovation, excavation, property transfer, excavation or ground disturbing activities of any nature, demolition or significant alteration. The Notice of Intent serves as the formal application for MDAH review.

A Notice of Intent is required for projects involving publicly owned property that has not been designated as a Mississippi Landmark and for privately or publicly owned property that has been designated as a Mississippi Landmark.

The public property owner or owner's representative must submit a Notice of Intent to MDAH in the early planning stages and always prior to the letting of bids or beginning a project for construction, improvement of any nature, or transfer of public property to private ownership. Supporting documentation, including, but not limited to, plans and specifications, maps, photographs, legal description, property deed, structural report, etc. must be submitted with the Notice of Intent, as appropriate.

MDAH will review the Notice of Intent in accordance with the procedures outlined in this document.

Source: Miss. Code Ann. §§ 39-7-1, 39-7-11, 39-7-22 (1972).

Rule 1.3 Permit Process.

State agencies, counties, cities, and all their political subdivisions are required to submit a Notice of Intent to MDAH for all projects affecting publicly owned property in accordance with Rule 1.2 for review. Work affecting archaeological sites or potential archaeological sites on publicly owned property also must be submitted to MDAH for review and approval.

The permit process begins with the filing of a Notice of Intent. The review process which follows is determined by the classification of the property at issue and the nature of the activity for which a permit is sought as set forth herein.

A. Undesignated Public Properties.

If, upon review, MDAH staff determines that a property does not meet the criteria for designation as a Mississippi Landmark as defined in Rule 1.4(A), staff will notify the applicant that the project may proceed without further review.

If MDAH determines that the property is a potential Landmark, in accordance with the criteria in Rule 1.4(A) and that the proposed project meets the Secretary of the Interior's *Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*, MDAH staff will notify the applicant that the project is acceptable or acceptable with conditions.

For public campuses, including schools, universities, public health facilities and other similar multi-building properties, the Board encourages the adoption of Memoranda of Agreement (MOA) between MDAH and the governing public institution to identify eligible resources for Mississippi Landmark designation and to establish priorities for preservation. In the absence of the adoption of an MOA, public entities shall act in accordance with the requirements of Rule 1.2, Rule 1.3 and Rule 1.4 for all buildings.

Transfer of Property. A Notice of Intent must be submitted in accordance with Rule 1.2 for the transfer of publicly owned property to private ownership prior to transfer. If, upon review, MDAH staff determines that the property is a potential Mississippi Landmark, the owner shall be informed and the proposed property transfer or sale shall not be commenced prior to Landmark designation and the authorization of a permit by the Board. The Board, in consultation with staff, may act to consider the property for Mississippi Landmark designation in accordance with the procedures in Rule 1.4. The Board may also authorize a permit for property transfer without designation.

Adverse Effect. If, upon review, MDAH staff determines that significant historic, archaeological or architectural sites, buildings, structures, locations or objects will be adversely affected by the public construction, alteration or demolition, MDAH will notify the applicant and owner that the proposed project must not be commenced without a permit issued by the Board. Additional information, including, but not limited to, a structural report

by a qualified structural engineer with experience working with historic structures may be required prior to MDAH action.

Consideration. The Board, in consultation with staff, may act to place a project that would adversely affect a potential Mississippi Landmark under consideration for a permit. Once the project is placed under consideration, MDAH will publish a legal notice soliciting written, public comment in accordance with Rule 1.5.

After the conclusion of the public comment period, the proposed project and written public comments may be placed on the Board agenda for action. Based on the comments and additional documentation received, the Board may act to approve or deny the permit.

If the Board denies the permit due to an adverse effect, it may also consider the property for Mississippi Landmark designation in accordance with the procedures in Rule 1.4.

Appeal. Should the owner of a potential Mississippi Landmark property wish to appeal the conditions of a permit or a decision involving a potential Mississippi Landmark property, the owner must provide the appeal in writing. Following review and recommendation by MDAH staff, the appeal will be considered by the Board.

Source: Miss. Code Ann. §§ 39-7-1, 39-7-22 (1972).

B. Designated Mississippi Landmark Properties.

Restoration, renovation, repairs, excavation, ground-disturbing activities, or other alterations of a designated Mississippi Landmark property may be conducted only pursuant to a permit approved by the Board of Trustees in accordance with this Rule 1.3(B) or Rule 1.3(C). Permit applications must be submitted using the Notice of Intent form in accordance with Rule 1.2.

Upon receipt of a Notice of Intent, the proposed project will be reviewed by MDAH staff to determine if the project is in conformance with the Secretary of the Interior's *Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*. Staff determinations for routine or minor activities under Rule 1.3(C) may include project approval or approval with conditions. If the project is not within the provisions of Rule 1.3(C), staff may deny a permit or make a recommendation to the board for action. Permit denials issued by MDAH staff may be provided to the Board for informational purposes.

Transfer of Property. MDAH requires a Notice of Intent to be submitted in accordance with Rule 1.2 for the transfer or sale of designated Mississippi Landmark property. The Notice of Intent must include contact information for the current and future owners.

Adverse Effect. When a Notice of Intent is received for the demolition or significant alteration that would adversely affect a designated Mississippi Landmark property, the owner may be asked to provide additional information, including, but not limited to, a structural report prepared by a qualified structural engineer with experience in evaluating historic structures.

Consideration. The Board, in consultation with staff, may place a property under consideration for demolition or significant alteration at the next regularly scheduled Board meeting. Once the

property is placed under consideration, MDAH will publish a legal notice soliciting written, public comment in accordance with Rule 1.5.

After the conclusion of the public comment period, the proposed demolition or significant alteration may be placed on the Board agenda for action at the next regularly scheduled meeting.

Archaeological Sites. Work affecting archaeological sites also requires a Mississippi Landmark permit in accordance with Rule 1.2 and Rule 1.3. Work must be conducted according to current Mississippi Standards for Archaeological Practices.

Duration of Permit. All permits issued by the Board are valid for one (1) year from the issue date of the permit. It is the responsibility of the property owner to request permit renewal for projects that will not be completed before the permit expires. The permit must be posted at the project site for the duration of the project. At the completion of the permitted project, the owner must submit documentation, including photographs, of the permitted activity.

Appeal. Should the owner of a designated Mississippi Landmark property wish to appeal the conditions of a permit, denial of a permit, or a decision by the Board involving a designated Mississippi Landmark property, the owner must provide the appeal in writing. Following review and recommendation by MDAH staff, the appeal will be considered by the Board.

Source: Miss. Code Ann. §§ 39-7-1, 39-7-11, 39-7-19 (1972).

C. Permits for Routine or Minor Activities.

Permits for projects that consist of routine or minor activities that are in conformance with the Secretary of the Interior's *Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*, as outlined below, may be approved by MDAH staff. At the next Board meeting, the Board will place upon its minutes the projects approved by the staff pursuant to Rule 1.3(C). The following are considered to be routine or minor activities (consistent with the Secretary of the Interior's *Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*) that may be approved by MDAH staff:

1. Appropriate removal of insignificant or incompatible minor additions or alterations;
2. Selective demolition for investigative purposes;
3. Repair or selective in-kind replacement of exterior cladding materials;
4. Repair or in-kind replacement of roofing, coping, gutters or downspouts;
5. Selective in-kind or appropriate replacement of exterior or interior lighting fixtures;
6. Repair or selective in-kind replacement of original or appropriate flooring materials;
7. Repair or selective in-kind replacement of interior or exterior finishes, including but not limited to structural finish materials (i.e. stucco, plaster, clapboard, etc.), paint, or stain;
8. Repair of original or appropriate windows or doors;
9. Heating, ventilation, air conditioning, or duct equipment replacement, if suitably screened or unobtrusive to the structure's original building materials or its aesthetic surroundings;
10. Plumbing or exhaust vents replacement, if suitably screened or unobtrusive to the structure's original building materials or its aesthetic surroundings;
11. In-kind repair or replacement of woodwork, metalwork, or other trim;

12. Selective brick pointing or cleaning of building exteriors, except by sandblasting, inappropriate chemicals, or other abrasive methods;
13. Removal of trees not more than 12 inches in diameter, or dead trees of any size with qualified arborist report;
14. In-kind repair or replacement of sidewalks or parking surfaces;
15. In-kind repair or selective replacement of fencing;
16. Other routine, minor, and compatible work in conformance with the Secretary of the Interior's *Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties*.

Source: Miss. Code Ann. §§ 39-7-1, 39-7-11, 39-7-19 (1972).

D. Burial Excavation Permits.

In the event that American Indian or aboriginal burials are encountered during any project, work must stop immediately and must not recommence until the Board has authorized a permit. If on private property, removal or excavation also requires the written permission of the landowner(s). No prehistoric or historic American Indian or aboriginal burial excavation permits will be issued unless the excavation is performed by a professional archaeologist and a physical anthropologist who meet the Secretary of the Interior's Professional Qualification Standards for Archaeology. If the burial(s) in question are reasonably expected to be of a known, federally recognized Tribe, MDAH shall consult with tribal authorities prior to the issuance of a permit.

Permits to excavate burials will not be issued unless there is an immediate threat to the integrity of the burial(s) through vandalism, natural forces, or unavoidable development. A burial is understood to include those items that were interred with the remains.

Source: Miss. Code Ann. § 39-7-19, 39-7-31 (1972).

Rule 1.4 Designation of Mississippi Landmarks.

The Board may designate publicly owned sites of historical or architectural significance as Mississippi Landmarks with or without the consent of the owner. The Board may designate privately owned sites of historical or architectural significance as Mississippi Landmarks at the written request of the owner.

Archaeological sites that are located in, on or under the surface of any lands belonging to the State of Mississippi or to any county, city, or political subdivision of the state are designated as Mississippi Landmarks. Such sites may not be taken, altered, destroyed salvaged or excavated without a permit from the Board in accordance with Rule 1.3.

Source: Miss. Code Ann. §§ 39-7-9, 39-7-11, 39-7-13 (1972).

A. Criteria for Designation.

Mississippi Landmarks are recognized as the state's historic, architectural, or cultural resources. They are sites, objects, buildings, artifacts, implements, or locations that contribute

to illustrating or interpreting the history or culture of the State of Mississippi. In order to be eligible for Mississippi Landmark designation, the resource(s) must be listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places (NRHP) in accordance with NRHP *Criteria for Evaluation*. Determinations of eligibility will be made by MDAH staff.

Of those eligible resources, the Board will give priority to properties that are individually listed in or eligible for listing in the NRHP; associated with courthouses or schools; located within Certified Local Government communities; or whose designation is supported by the property owner or local preservation commission. While the Board will give these properties priority, it has the authority to designate any eligible publicly owned property, with or without the consent of the owner.

Source: Miss. Code Ann. §§ 39-7-3, 39-7-4, 39-7-7, 39-7-11, 39-1-22 (1972).

B. Designation Process.

When a Mississippi Landmark designation request is made by the property owner or MDAH staff determines that a property is eligible for designation, MDAH staff may prepare a significance report, which includes a statement of significance, resource description, and a list of all sites, objects, buildings, artifacts, implements, or locations to be included in the proposed Mississippi Landmark designation.

Consideration. The Board, in consultation with staff, may place a property under consideration for designation at the next regularly scheduled Board meeting. Once placed under consideration, MDAH will publish a legal notice soliciting written, public comment in accordance with Rule 1.5.

After the conclusion of the public comment period, the proposed designation may be placed on the Board agenda for action at the next regularly scheduled meeting.

For private properties in which designation must be made by owner request, the Board may elect to proceed with designation without public comment.

Designation. Upon Board action to designate a property as a Mississippi Landmark, MDAH will inform the property owners in writing and shall prepare and execute a Certification of Mississippi Landmark Designation to be recorded in the deed records of the chancery court of the county in which the property is located.

Source: Miss. Code Ann. §§ 39-7-1, 39-7-11 (1972).

C. Removal of Designation Process.

When the removal of designation of a Mississippi Landmark property is proposed, the property owner may be asked to provide additional information, including, but not limited to, a structural report prepared by a qualified structural engineer with experience in evaluating historic structures.

Consideration. The Board, in consultation with staff, may place a property under consideration

for removal of designation at the next regularly scheduled Board meeting. Upon Board action to place a designated Mississippi Landmark under consideration for removal of designation, MDAH will publish a legal notice soliciting written, public comment in accordance with Rule 1.5.

After the conclusion of the public comment period, the proposed removal of designation will be placed on the Board agenda for action at the next regularly scheduled meeting.

Removal of Designation. Upon Board action to remove the Mississippi Landmark designation from a property, MDAH will inform the property owner in writing and will prepare and execute a Certification of the Removal of Mississippi Landmark Designation to be recorded by the clerk in the deed records of the chancery court of the county in which the property is located.

Source: Miss. Code Ann. §§ 39-7-3, 39-7-15 (1972).

Rule 1.5 Legal Notice and Public Comment.

The publication of a legal notice is required when the Board acts to place a project or property under consideration for:

- a. Designation as a Mississippi Landmark
- b. Removal of Mississippi Landmark designation
- c. A permit for a project that would adversely affect a designated Mississippi Landmark
- d. A permit for a project that would adversely affect a potential Mississippi Landmark
- e. Any other circumstance that the Board may deem appropriate

MDAH shall publish the legal notice soliciting written, public comment in the newspaper of record in the county in which the property is located and on the MDAH website at least thirty (30) days prior to further Board action. The notice must identify the property and the matter that is under consideration. Proof of publication shall be provided to the Board.

After the conclusion of the public comment period, the proposed project and written public comments will be placed on the Board agenda.

Rule 1.6 Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act and Preservation Tax Incentive Review Procedures.

For projects involving designated Mississippi Landmark properties also under review in accordance with Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act, the federal review process will take precedence over the Mississippi Landmark review. However, MDAH may elect to require that a Mississippi Landmark permit be obtained in addition to the Section 106 review. A burial permit is always required for prehistoric or historic American Indian or aboriginal burials.

For projects involving designated Mississippi Landmark properties also under review in accordance with the federal or state preservation tax incentives programs, the tax incentives review process will take precedence over the Mississippi Landmark review. However, MDAH, may elect to require that a Mississippi Landmark permit be obtained in addition to the tax

review process. If the applicant elects to forego tax incentives, the project will be reviewed under the Antiquities Law, as described in Rule 1.3.

Source: Miss. Code Ann. §§ 39-7-1 (1972).

Rule 1.7 Temporary Restraining Orders

When MDAH has confirmed that work has been initiated on a designated Mississippi Landmark property, or a potential Mississippi Landmark on publicly owned property prior to the issuance of a permit, MDAH will immediately contact the owner to request that all work is halted until a Notice of Intent form is submitted for MDAH review and approval in accordance with the aforementioned policies. If the owner refuses to cease operations or follow the permit process, MDAH may seek a temporary restraining order through the Attorney General's Office.

Source: Miss. Code Ann. §§ 39-7-22, 39-7-33, 39-7-35 (1972).

Part 3 Chapter 2: Procedures for Implementation of the State Historical Marker Program

(Adopted by the Board of Trustees on January 15, 2010, Amended July 19, 2013, Amended July 14, 2017)

Rule 2.1. Any individual, group, or organization may submit an application to MDAH to sponsor a state historical marker. In order for a site to qualify for a marker, the applicant must show that the subject is of historical significance to the local community, state, or nation. For places of worship, preference will be given to historic structures and/or structures associated with significant historical events, persons, or communities. For cemeteries, markers should recognize the cemetery's association with a community or significant persons, and/or cemetery art. The Board of Trustees may accept or reject any application for state historical markers.

Upon receipt of a completed state historical marker application, including relevant background information, the application will be reviewed by a committee composed of MDAH staff and appointed by the director. Based on the information provided by the sponsor(s), along with other supporting documentation, the committee will make a recommendation to the Board of Trustees concerning the application(s). The state historical marker committee will meet monthly, if necessary, to consider new applications and present them for approval at the next regularly scheduled board meeting.

The text of a state historical marker shall be drafted by MDAH staff in consultation with the sponsor. MDAH reserves the right to approve the final marker text. Upon approval of a text, MDAH staff will order the marker and provide copies of the order information to the sponsor.

Sponsors of new state historical markers shall be solely responsible for the cost of the marker(s), and a signed statement from the sponsor(s) must be included with the application. The manufacturer will bill the sponsor directly. MDAH will not accept or process payments for state

historical marker(s).

The purchase of a replacement marker and/or the repair of an existing state historical marker shall be the sole responsibility of the original sponsor or other applicant(s), and a signed statement approving the cost of the replacement or repair must be included with the application for replacement.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Part 3 Chapter 3: Scope of Work Policy for the Hurricane Relief Grant Program
(Adopted by the Board of Trustees on October 16, 2009)

Introduction. The Scope of Work Policy for rehabilitation projects funded through the Hurricane Relief Grant Program for Historic Preservation (HRG) was developed in an effort to:

- A. judiciously administer the limited funding available for restoration of historic buildings damaged by Hurricanes Katrina and Rita and
- B. to ensure fairness and uniformity in the treatment of grantees.

It has been refined as the result of experience gained over the course of the grant program.

Rule 3.1 Grant-Refundable Scope of Work Items. Fundable work shall include design, supervision, and execution of repairs and shall be limited to:

A. Storm Damage:

- 1. Repair of damage caused, directly or indirectly, by Hurricanes Katrina or Rita. Such damage is defined as destruction or deterioration caused:

- a. directly by the storm
- b. indirectly by the storm, if it exacerbated pre-existing conditions, such as deteriorated foundations, roofs, framing, etc.
- c. indirectly by work which was undertaken to repair storm damage but which actually caused additional damage (such as work by untrained volunteers who removed beaded board wall coverings or unscrupulous/inert contractors who performed substandard work.)

B. Underlying Conditions:

Repair of underlying conditions not caused by the storm, but the repair of which is:

- 1. necessary in order to repair damage actually caused by the storm, or

2. necessary in order to protect the investment of public funds expended in repairing storm damage

C. Building Fabric:

1. Repair of historic building fabric.
2. Repair of non-historic fabric that was in-place at the time of the storm. Such fabric includes roof coverings, structural systems (framing and foundations), and mechanical or electrical systems (limited to rough-in):
 - a. Upgrading is allowed when the system at the time of the storm no longer meets code requirements or is no longer readily available.
 - b. When an existing inappropriate building component has been damaged by the storm, the grant will cover (and require) replacement with a historically appropriate component.
3. Finish of building fabric:
 - a. Limited to 2 coats of primer on new or repaired wood in order to prevent damage by the elements until the owner can afford to paint. The policy includes interior as well as exterior wood.
 - i. Priming floor boards is not covered by the grant, although new boards may be sanded to produce an even surface.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 3.2 Exceptions to Grant-Refundable Scope of Work Items.

Reasoning: Restrictions on the scope of work that can be funded by the HRG sometimes result in leaving the homes of people of very limited financial means in an unoccupiable condition. For instance, the bathroom plumbing is roughed-in, but there are no toilets, tubs, or sinks. The kitchen plumbing might be roughed-in but there is no floor covering and no sink. If such buildings cannot be inhabited, they are likely to deteriorate over time, in which case the HRG grant-supported work would be lost. To avoid that loss, a modification in the sorts of work that are covered by the HRG is proposed, as follows:

Exceptions for:

- A. Grantees who own property in an area that serves very low-income residents and who are not financially able to pay for the work necessary to make the buildings habitable.

B. Non-Profit organizations which are not financially able to pay for the work necessary to restore to a state of utility a building being rehabilitated for their own use or other public benefit.

1. Underlying Conditions:

Repair of underlying conditions not caused by the storm but the repair of which is:

- a. Necessary to make the building habitable and the property owner is not financially able to undertake the work.

2. Building Fabric:

a. Repair of non-historic fabric:

- i. Including purchase and installation of basic-level built-in kitchen, mechanical and electrical systems and fixtures (not appliances), such as toilets, sinks, wall switches, ceiling light fixtures, switch plates, etc.

b. Finish of Building Fabric:

- i. Paint on the exterior of the building.
- ii. Floors finished to a point of utility. Finishing may include laying floor coverings in the kitchen or bath and refinishing wood floors with clear varnish or paint.
- iii. Wall and ceiling surfaces made ready for paint or other finish.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Part 3 Chapter 4: Policy and Standards for Curated Federal Archaeological Collections
(Adopted by the Board of Trustees on October 16, 2009)

Introduction. Curation at the MDAH Curation Facility

The Mississippi Department of Archives and History was established in 1902 and serves as the State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO). In addition, all state owned collections are housed in the MDAH facility in addition to several federal collections, such as the Federal Highway Administration. The facility also houses the state-wide archaeological and architectural survey files, site card files and the National Register of Historic Places files.

The MDAH facility was initially designed for the purpose of curating the state's paper archives. The building design consists of concrete exterior walls, a covered loading dock and a poured concrete floor. The facility is located on the third floor of the Charlotte Capers Building. All artifact collections are curated on this floor. The facility is temperature controlled, virtually fire-

proof, and has seven miles of movable shelving that is capable of storing over 15,000 curation boxes measuring 15 X 12 X 10. The archaeological laboratory is in the basement of the Capers Building and is where the incoming collections are processed before being curated on the 3rd floor. Security measures include controlled access to the collections. All visitors must be logged in before they are given access to the collections. In addition, the Capitol Police patrol inside the building twice a night.

Rule 4.1 Procedures for Curated Collections.

- A. A collection must include all data and paperwork generated as a result of a project included but not limited to:
 - 1. all field notes,
 - 2. specimens,
 - 3. records,
 - 4. photographs,
 - 5. maps,
 - 6. computer-generated media,
 - 7. and all other data.

All paper documents and photographs must be originals. Two bound copies of the final report and one unbound copy must be included with the collection.

- B. All necessary conservation treatment of artifacts or records must be completed prior to arriving at the MDAH facility. We are not responsible for conservation that is the result of conditions existing prior to receipt of the materials. Artifacts which will need future conservation treatments need to be identified and the cost of those treatments will be assessed in addition to the standard curation fee.
- C. Any collection, in our opinion, that is infested with vermin will be returned promptly at the expense of the owner.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 4.2 Standards for Records.

- A. All records and notes must be accompanied by a catalog. The catalog must include but is not limited to:

1. project,
2. site,
3. records type,
4. and subject for each document or group of related documents.

All field notes, forms, drawings, catalogues, inventories will be printed or copied onto acid-free paper. All paper records will be placed in acid-free archival folders that are permanently labeled with the pertinent information listed previously.

- B. Records with a significant amount of dirt or soil smears will be copied before being submitted for curation. All soiled originals will be curated with the artifacts.
- C. A copy of all records must be submitted on acid-free paper. These will be stored separately from the originals as per 36 CFR Part 79.9, 6ii.
- D. All computer generated media must be accompanied by a paper copy of the data contained on the cd and a description of the programs used to create the data. If any information was derived by custom computer programming, a description of the file structures must also be included.
- E. Records will be re-boxed into standard MDAH record boxes at a cost of \$50.00 per linear foot.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 4.3 Standards for Photographs.

- A. Black and white film must be processed to archival standards (See NPS Standards for photographs). All negatives must be stored in 2 1/2" x 11" polyethylene pages. Archival quality folders, pages or envelopes must be used for other photographic materials which will not fit into a standard page size holder.
- B. All photographs must be accompanied by the original photo log containing the project name, subject and date.
- C. All negatives must be the original film. No copies.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 4.4 Standards for Artifact Collections.

- A. All artifacts must be organized by site and provenience within each site. All materials separated out for photos, etc. should be re-incorporated into their original provenience.

- B. All artifacts must be contained in a 4 mil polyethelene “zip lock” type bags with a white panel area for descriptions. Sandwhich bags, freezer bags, paper bags and all other kinds of bags are not appropriate and will not be accepted. All provenience information will be written in the white panel area of the bag in permanent black marker (i.e. sharpie marker/pen). Bags must be punched with a standard hole punch near the top of the bag to allow air/moisture to escape. Faunal remains/human remains can be placed in a paper bag inside a plastic 4 mil polyethelene zip lock bag. Soil samples also need to be placed in 4 mil polyethelene bags but can be secured with string or wire. Fragile items must be packed in acid free paper and placed inside MDAH approved archival boxes.
- C. All artifacts and records will be re-packed into the standard MDAH box after they arrive and are assessed. Artifacts and records therefore can be shipped in a manner left up to the submitter. Each box must contain 2 copies of bag by bag inventory of its contents.

Inventory information must include but is not limited to:

- 1. site number,
- 2. provenience,
- 3. type of material and
- 4. catalog number.

The charge for re-boxing is \$50.00.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 4.5 Fees and Cost Computation. The curation fee for long-term storage and care is \$250.00 per cubic foot or fraction thereof. Fees for artifacts and record collections are computed separately. For example, 5.7 cubic feet of specimens accompanied by 2.2 cubic feet of records would be charged as 6 cubic feet of specimens and 2 cubic feet of records. Oversized objects which will not fit into a 15x12x10 inch box will be billed on the basis of the amount of shelf space required for their storage at a rate of \$250.00 per linear foot. There is an additional \$50.00 charge per box for re-boxing collection in MDAH curation boxes.

All contracts will be re-negotiated after a 5 year period.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Part 3 Chapter 5: Mississippi’s State Historic Preservation Tax Incentives Program
(Adopted by the Board of Trustees on October 16, 2009)

Introduction. In March 2006, Governor Haley Barbour signed Senate Bill 3067, which created the Mississippi state historic preservation tax incentives program to encourage the rehabilitation of historic buildings. The Mississippi Department of Archives and History (MDAH) is responsible for the administration of the program, which provides for a state income tax credit equal to 25% of the qualified expenses of rehabilitating historic structures used for residential or

business purposes. Properties do not need to be income-producing to qualify for the state tax credit; therefore, rehabilitations of owner-occupied residences are eligible. Only expenditures incurred after January 1, 2006, qualify.

Properties qualifying for the 20% federal preservation tax credit will also qualify for the state tax credit. In effect, the combined federal and state credits can reduce the cost of a certified rehabilitation of an income-producing historic structure by 45%.

For additional information about the state and federal tax incentives, and to determine if a property is listed on the National Register of Historic Places or is a Mississippi Landmark, please contact the Department at the address or telephone number listed below. The National Park Service's web site (<http://www2.cr.nps.gov/tps>) contains additional information about the federal tax program, as well as technical guidance, including the Secretary of the Interior's *Standards for Rehabilitation* and the Preservation Briefs.

An application packet, which includes the State Historic Preservation Certification Application form, instructions, a sample completed application, and a copy of the Secretary of the Interior's *Standards for Rehabilitation* is available for free when requested via hpres@mdah.state.ms.us and sent electronically or for a fee from the following address:

<p>Historic Preservation Division Mississippi Department of Archives and History P.O. Box 571 Jackson, MS 39205-0571 601-576-6940</p>

Rule 5.1 Eligible Properties. Properties eligible to receive the credits are those:

- A. individually listed in the National Register of Historic Places,
- B. contributing to the significance of a National Register historic district, or
- C. designated as Mississippi Landmarks.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 5.2 Eligible Projects.

- A. To be eligible, the qualified rehabilitation expenditures must exceed:
 - 1. \$5,000 in the case of an owner-occupied dwelling, or
 - 2. 50% of the total basis in the property in the case of all properties other than owner-occupied dwellings. (Generally, "basis" is the purchase price, less the cost of the land, plus any improvements already made to the property, minus the depreciation taken on the property.)

- B. All work must meet the Secretary of the Interior’s *Standards for Rehabilitation*.
- C. Only rehabilitation expenditures incurred after January 1, 2006, qualify.
- D. Not-for-profit entities are ineligible to receive the credits.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 5.3 Application Process. To qualify for the state tax credit, property owners must submit a three-part State Historic Preservation Certification Application, along with photographs, to MDAH. However, for properties that also qualify for the federal credits, the property owner need only submit the federal certification application, along with the one-page form, “Statement of Intent: Mississippi State Historic Preservation Tax Credit.”

The three-part application is used to:

- A. request certification that the property is eligible to receive the credit;
- B. request a determination that the proposed rehabilitation is in compliance with the Secretary of the Interior’s *Standards for Rehabilitation*; and
- C. request certification that the project, as completed, meets the Standards.

MDAH reviews the entire project, including related demolition and new construction, and certifies the project only if all work meets the Standards. It is **strongly** recommended that the application be submitted for review and approval before starting work so that potential problems in compliance with the Standards, which might jeopardize the tax credit, can be avoided.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 5.4 Photographs. Along with the Historic Preservation Certification Application, a complete set of color photographs, not smaller than 4”x6” in size and showing both the interior and exterior of the building before the start of the project, must be submitted. Photographs must be clear and of high quality, showing each exterior elevation (front, rear, and both sides) and all major and representative minor interior spaces. In addition, photos of significant features, such as porches, mantelpieces, staircases, ceiling medallions, etc., should be included. No Polaroids, photocopies, photographs sent via e-mail, or photographs on disk, CD, or DVD will be accepted. When the project is completed, a full set of “after rehab” photographs must be submitted with the request for final certification.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 5.5 Qualified Expenditures. Allowable expenditures include costs associated with the work undertaken on a structural component of a historic building—such as walls, roofs, windows, floors—as well as central air conditioning and heating systems, plumbing and plumbing fixtures,

electrical wiring and lighting fixtures, elevators, and other components related to the operation or maintenance of the building. In addition, there are “soft costs” that qualify, such as architectural and engineering fees, site survey fees, development fees, and other construction-related costs. The tax credit does not apply to such costs as acquiring or furnishing the building, new additions, new building construction, or parking lots, sidewalks, landscaping, or other facilities related to the building. (Qualified rehabilitation expenditures are defined in Section 47(c)(2)(A) of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended.)

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 5.6 Claiming the Credit. The Department shall issue a certificate verifying the eligible credit, and this certificate shall be attached to all income tax returns on which the credit is claimed. If the amount of the tax credit exceeds the total state income tax liability for the year in which the rehabilitated property is placed in service, the unused tax credit may be carried forward for the ten (10) succeeding tax years.

Source: *Miss. Code* § 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 5.7 Processing Fees. Pursuant to requirements of Senate Bill 3067, Laws of Mississippi, 2006, the MDAH Board of Trustees shall establish fees for reviewing applications, based on the cost of the rehabilitation. Fees are charged according to a two-tiered system: a preliminary fee and a final fee. The preliminary fee is \$100 for projects estimated to cost less than \$100,000 and \$250 for projects estimated to cost more than \$100,000. This preliminary fee, which is non-refundable, covers MDAH review of proposed rehabilitation work and must be submitted with Part 2 of the certification application, “Description of Rehabilitation.” Payment must be by check made payable to the Mississippi Department of Archives and History. When a project has been completed, the property owner should submit Part 3 of the application, “Request for Certification of Completed Work,” along with the final fee. The final fee is based on the total amount of rehabilitation expenditures according to the fee schedule below, minus the preliminary fee paid with submission of the Part 2 application. MDAH will not issue a certification decision until payment has been received.

<i>STATE TAX CREDIT FEE SCHEDULE</i>	
<u>Cost of Rehabilitation</u>	<u>Total Fee</u>
\$5,001 to \$9,999	\$150
\$10,000 to \$24,999	\$225
\$25,000 to \$99,999	\$300
\$100,000 to \$499,999	\$500
\$500,000 to \$999,999	\$1,500
\$1,000,000 or more	\$2,000

Please note that property owners who also apply for the federal historic preservation tax credit will be required to pay an additional processing fee to the National Park Service. The federal fee schedule differs from that of the state.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Part 3 Chapter 6: Criteria for the Certification of Historical Significance of Abandoned Cemeteries under the Provisions of House Bill No. 780 Laws of Mississippi, 1971

(Approved by the Board of Trustees on August 27, 1971; Amended February 15, 2002)

Rule 6.1. The request for a certificate of historical significance must pertain to an “abandoned” cemetery.

- A. For the purposes of the implementation of this act, an “abandoned” cemetery shall be construed to be one that is not adequately maintained by its legal owner or owners, whether religious bodies, private individuals, or governmental agencies.
- B. An “abandoned” cemetery shall also be interpreted as one in which no burials have been made in the fifty years preceding the date of the official, written request to the Board of Trustees of the Department of Archives and History for a certificate of historical significance with no future planned burials.
- C. A single grave, in some instances, may constitute an “abandoned” cemetery.
- D. American Indian burial grounds shall be regarded as “abandoned” cemeteries.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 6.2. In determining whether or not to issue a certificate of historical significance, the Board of Trustees will consider:

- A. Cemeteries which contain the graves of persons who have contributed significantly to the history of the nation, the state, or the local region.
- B. Cemeteries which are associated with events that have made a significant contribution to the broad patterns of the history of the nation, the state, or the local region.
- C. Cemeteries which are associated with properties entered on The National Register of Historic Places.
- D. Cemeteries which are associated with “State Archeological Landmarks,” as provided for in the Antiquities Law of the State of Mississippi.
- E. Cemeteries which are located on land belonging to the State of Mississippi, to a county or municipality, or to any political subdivision of the State.
- F. Cemeteries containing the graves of veterans of any of the nation’s wars.
- G. Cemeteries containing statuary, vaults, markers, and monuments of sufficient architectural and artistic value to merit their protection and preservation.

- H. Cemeteries which, by their preservation, would contribute in turn to the preservation of the earlier historical image of a locality.
- I. Cemeteries containing 18th century burials.
- J. American Indian burial ground, officially identified by professional archaeologists.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 6.3. Those Cemeteries which have been officially certified by the Board of Trustees shall be inventoried by local persons or groups requesting the certificate, and the inventory shall be deposited with the Department of Archives and History. This procedure will not be necessary if the Department already has the records for that particular cemetery in its collections.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Part 3 Chapter 7: Policy on Access to Archaeological Site Records

(Adopted by the Board of Trustees on January 17, 1986; Amended October 16, 2009)

Introduction. Because of the Department's responsibility to protect and preserve archaeological resources, it is necessary to restrict access to locational information regarding most archaeological sites.

Unfortunately, earlier reports which were made available to the general public often gave detailed instructions and/or maps on how to find specific sites. Because of an increase in vandalism, grave robbing, and other forms of recreationally-oriented activity, it has been the policy of this Department in recent years to omit site locations from archaeological reports and to maintain a "need-to-know" policy on access to site locations. This policy has legal backing in an exclusion from the state's Open Records Law.

Rule 7.1. Only those who have a legitimate need should be given access to or be supplied with information on site locations unless such locations, as in the case of state parks, etc. are already a matter of public record.

The individuals who qualify for access are:

- A. professional archaeologists with a research interest,
- B. developers who must know of the existence of a site in order to avoid it,
- C. federal, state, county, or municipal officials who must know of locations for management reasons, or
- D. landowners who have expressed an interest in the preservation of sites which they own.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 25-59-1, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Part 3 Chapter 8: State of Mississippi Procedures for the Certified Local Government Program

(Adopted by the Board of Trustees on February; Amended July 1990, October 20, 2000, and April 21, 2006)

Introduction. Since 1966, when Congress established an historic preservation program for the United States, the National Historic Preservation Program has operated as a decentralized partnership between the federal government and the states. The federal government established a program of identification, evaluation, and protection of historic properties which the states, for the most part, implement. The success of the working relationship between the states and the Department of Interior prompted Congress in 1980 to expand the partnership to provide for participation by local governments. The National Historic Preservation Act, as amended (16 U.S.C. 470 et seq.) contains the statutory basis for the federal-state-local preservation partnership. The federal law directs the State Historic Preservation Officer and the Secretary of the Interior to certify local governments to participate in this partnership and specifies several requirements which the local government must meet. The purpose of this document is to outline how this partnership will be implemented in Mississippi.

Rule 8.1 Definitions.

- A. 36 CFR 61: The “Procedures for State, Tribal and Local Government Historic Preservation Programs.” 36 CFR 61 incorporates the requirements for state and local historic preservation programs as specified in the National Historic Preservation Act as amended and establishes Federal Regulatory guidance for the process by which eligible and interested local governments will be certified to participate formally in the national Historic Preservation Program.
- B. Certified Local Government: As defined by the National Historic Preservation Act, a certified local government is a local government that has been certified to carry out the purposes stated in Section 103 (c) of the National Historic Preservation Act, as amended. Hereinafter referenced “CLG.” (alternatively quote Sec 301, 15?)
- C. Historic Preservation Planning: A rational systematic process designed to develop, produce, implement, and revise a historic preservation plan. The planning process typically includes such activities as public participation, gathering and analyzing historic resource information, analyzing preservation needs, identifying goals and objectives, determining strategies for and monitoring goal achievement and identifying the need for and carry out plan revision. The primary purpose of historic preservation planning is to ensure the protection and preservation of valued historic and cultural resources for future generations. The major product of the planning process is the historic preservation plan. Preservation planning is carried out by local, state, tribal, and federal government agencies, as well as by private organizations. The Secretary of the Interior’s Standards and Guidelines for Preservation Planning provide technical guidance on analyzing historic and cultural resource information for planning purposes.

- D. **Historic Preservation Plan:** A document that reports the findings and conclusions of the planning process, articulates the vision for the future of historic preservation in the planning area, and identifies goals and objectives for achieving that future. The plan is a tool for guiding decision making and action related to the identification, evaluation, registration, treatment, protection, interpretation, research, and management of historic and cultural resources. In local communities, a preservation plan may be incorporated as an element in the comprehensive or master plan, or it may be a stand-alone document. Occasionally, historic district preservation plans may be prepared to outline detailed preservation and management information tailored specifically for the historic resources in each district. The SHPO is required by 101(b)(3)(C) the National Historic Preservation Act to prepare and implement a comprehensive statewide historic preservation plan, and requirements are outlined in Chapter 6, Section G of the *Historic Preservation Fund Grants Manual*.
- E. **Historic Preservation Fund:** A fund created by Congress in Section 108 of the Historic Preservation Act to carry out the purpose of the Historic Preservation Act. The historic preservation fund supports a program of matching grants-in-aid to the states for historic preservation programs, as authorized by Section 101 (e) (1) of the National Historic Preservation Act. Hereinafter referenced “HPF.”
- F. **Historic Preservation Fund Manual:** The manual that sets forth National Park Service administrative procedures and guidelines for activities concerning the federally related historic preservation programs of the states and local governments. The manual includes guidelines and procedures for the administration of the historic preservation grant-in-aid.
- G. **Local Government:** A city, county, township, municipality, or any other general purpose political subdivision of Mississippi.
- H. **Mississippi Department of Archives and History:** The Mississippi agency charged with the responsibility of protecting and preserving of the state’s historic resources. The Director of the Department is also Mississippi’s appointed State Historic Preservation Officer (SHPO). The Department’s Historic Preservation Division is the State Historic Preservation Office (also known as the SHPO). For the purposes of these regulations, the role and duties of the MDAH and the SHPO are concurrent, and they shall be identified as one unit and shall be abbreviated as MDAH/SHPO.
- I. **National Historic Preservation Act of 1966 (as amended (16 U.S.C. et seq.)):** This Act authorizes the promulgation of regulations for approving state historic preservation programs, certifying local governments and the processes for administering and allocating grants, conducting performance evaluations and establishing guidelines for use and distribution to local governments. Hereinafter referenced the “National Historic Preservation Act.”
- J. **National Register of Historic Places:** The national list of districts, buildings, sites, structures, and objects significant in American history, architecture, archaeology, engineering, and culture, promulgated through the states, and maintained by the Secretary

of the Interior under authorization of Section 101 (a) (1) (A) of the National Historic Preservation Act, as amended. Hereinafter referenced the “National Register.”

- K. Secretary: The Secretary of the Interior. Unless otherwise stated in law or regulation, the Secretary of the Interior has delegated the authority and responsibility for administering the National Historic Preservation Program to the National Park Service.
- L. Secretary of the Interior’s “*Standards and Guidelines for Archaeology and Historic Preservation*”: The Secretary of the Interior’s “*Standards and Guidelines for Archaeology and Historic Preservation*” are intended to be applied to a wide variety of resources types, including buildings, sites, structures, objects, and districts. The Secretary of the Interior’s “*Standards and Guidelines for Archaeology and Historic Preservation*” are not codified as program regulations but may be used as a guide by anyone planning work on historic properties. They establish professional standards and provide advice on the preservation and protection of all cultural resources listed on or eligible for the National Register of Historic Places. Hereinafter referenced the “*Secretary’s Standards.*”
- M. Subgrantee: The agency, institutions, organization, or individual to which a subgrant is made by the MDAH/SHPO and which is accountable to MDAH/SHPO for use of the funds provided.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-5-1, 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 8.2 Description and Statement of Purpose.

- A. The Certified Local Government Program is designed to promote the preservation of prehistoric and historic sites, structures, objects, buildings, and historic districts by establishing a partnership between the local government and the Mississippi Department of Archives and the Mississippi State Historic Preservation Office (MDAH/SHPO), which seeks to encourage and expand local involvement in preservation issues. Such partnership will help to assure that:
 - 1. historic preservation issues are understood and addressed at the local level and are integrated into the local planning and decision making process at the earliest possible opportunity;
 - 2. local interest and concerns are integrated into the identification, evaluation, nomination, and protection processes of the MDAH/SHPO;
 - 3. information concerning local historic preservation issues is provided to the MDAH/SHPO and to the public;
 - 4. local landmark legislation, including but not limited to a historic preservation ordinance and historic preservation commissions are established in cities where they do not yet exist and are updated, if necessary, in cities where they already exist; and

5. existing Mississippi State Survey File information is made available to the local community to use in identifying and defining community and neighborhood development and conservation areas.
- B. By participating in the identification, evaluation, and protection of historic resources within their communities, Certified Local Government (CLGs):
1. assume a leadership role in the preservation of the community's prehistoric and historic resources;
 2. have a formal role in the National Register nomination review process;
 3. participate in the establishment of regional and state historic preservation objectives; and
 4. are eligible to apply for subgrants from a designated CLG fund established annually by the MDAH/SHPO whenever such funds are available.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-59-1, 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 8.3 Requirements for Certification of Local Government Programs in Mississippi. The National Historic Preservation Act, as amended (16 U.S.C. 470 et seq.), which established the Certified Local Government program, contains five broad standards, all of which must be met by a local government before the local government may be certified and maintained to retain certification. The federal standards, where appropriate, are further defined and amplified below.

- A. The local government shall enforce appropriate state or local legislation for the designation and protection of historic properties as defined in the State of Mississippi Local Government Historic Preservation Law, Sections 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, and 39-13-9, Mississippi Code of 1972, as amended.
- B. The local government shall establish by state or local legislation an adequate and qualified historic preservation review commission (Commission) composed of professional and lay members.
 1. The Commission shall exist as authorized under the Mississippi Local Government Historic Preservation Act of 1978 (State of Mississippi Local Government Historic Preservation Law, Sections 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, and 39-13-9, Mississippi Code of 1972, as amended).
 2. The State of Mississippi Local Government Historic Preservation Law, Sections 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, and 39-13-9, Mississippi Code of 1972, as amended, requires that the Commission consist of not fewer than five nor more than nine members, who shall be appointed by the governing authority of the county or municipality, or a combination thereof, establishing the commission.

3. All Commission members shall have a demonstrated interest, competence, knowledge, or expertise in historic preservation. To the extent available in the community, the local government shall appoint professional members from the historic preservation related disciplines of architecture, history, architectural history, or archaeology or from such historic preservation related disciplines as urban planning, American studies, American civilization, cultural geography, cultural anthropology, interior design, law, and related fields.

Since the role of the Commission is vital to the implementation of the CLG program, each local government applying for status as a CLG shall provide the following information indicating good faith effort to locate professionals to serve on the Commission. If a documented good faith effort has been made unsuccessfully by the governing authority to locate residents of the county or municipality to serve on the commission, the governing authority may appoint individuals who own property within the boundary of the county or municipality, or both, or are in the service of an employer located within the boundary of the county or municipality, or both if

- a. The local government shall run at least one public notice in a newspaper in its jurisdiction to solicit responses from citizens who are professionals in the Historic Preservation related fields of architecture, history, architectural history, or archaeology or from historic preservation related disciplines as urban planning, American studies, American Civilization, cultural geography, cultural anthropology, interior design, law, and related fields and who are interested in serving on the Commission. At the same time, the local government may contact such known professionals to invite them to submit their qualification for candidacy to the Commission. If there are no respondents to the public notice or contact by the local government, or if the chosen professional declines the appointment to the Commission, the local government may compose its Commission of lay persons. To be appointed to the Commission, lay members must have a demonstrated interest, competence, knowledge of expertise in historic preservation, which should be identified by information provided to the local government which shall include, but shall not be limited to: educational and volunteer background, attendance at workshops and seminars, and related activities. The local government shall decide, with the assistance of the MDAH/SHPO upon request, which lay persons should be considered for appointment to the Commission.
- b. The local government shall allow three weeks (15 working days) for responses. Any respondents shall provide their professional qualifications as well as information concerning their demonstrated interest, competence, knowledge, or expertise. Such information may include, but is not limited to: education and professional background, volunteer work, attendance at workshops, seminars, and other experience as applicable.

- c. When the local government has accrued adequate information concerning the qualifications and expertise of individuals who have expressed interest in being appointed to the Commission, it shall decide, with the assistance of the MDAH/SHPO upon request, which individuals, if any, shall be considered for appointment to the Commission.
 - d. Resumes for each member of the Historic Preservation Commission, including, where appropriate, credentials or member expertise in fields related to historic preservation. As noted in Rule 8.3 (B) (3), the Commission shall consist of members who have demonstrated special interest, experience, knowledge, or expertise in the primary historic preservation related disciplines of architecture, history, architectural history, or archaeology or from secondary historic preservation related disciplines as urban planning, American studies, American civilization, cultural geography, cultural anthropology, interior design, law, and related fields.
4. The commission shall establish its own regular meeting time; however, the first meeting shall be held within thirty (30) days of the adoption of a local historic preservation ordinance and regular meetings shall be scheduled at least once every three (3) months. The chairman or any two (2) members may call a special meeting to consider an urgent matter.
 5. At least one member of the Commission shall attend at least one informational or educational meeting per year. In order to meet this requirement, a meeting shall be recognized by MDAH/SHPO as providing appropriate training pertaining to the work and functions of the Commission or to historic preservation in general. If a commission member(s) attends such meeting as delegated representative(s) of the commission, he shall then present material from the informational or educational meeting at the next regularly scheduled commission meeting.
 6. The Commission shall transmit an annual report of its activities to the MDAH/SHPO. Such reports shall include, at a minimum, the number of case reviews, new designations made, progress on survey activities, revised resumes for commission members, attendance records, and documentation for the education and informational meeting referred to in Rule 8.3 (B) (5), above. Reports shall be submitted within sixty days after the end of the fiscal year for the local government. If the Commission has been established during the preceding fiscal year, the report shall reflect that portion of the year in which they were established.
 7. The Commission shall monitor and report to the MDAH/SHPO any activity in the community affecting any property listed on the National Register of Historic Places; and

8. Records of proceedings shall be transmitted to the MDAH/SHPO at the same time they are transmitted to the members of the Commission.
- C. The local government shall maintain a system for the survey and inventory of historic properties.
1. The local government shall initiate or continue a process for survey and inventory for properties within the local jurisdiction and shall ensure that the process for survey and inventory can be readily integrated into the statewide comprehensive historic preservation planning and other appropriate planning processes. The local government survey and inventory efforts shall be coordinated with and approved by the MDAH/SHPO;
 2. All inventory data shall be in a format that is consistent with the statewide comprehensive historic preservation planning and other appropriate planning processes;
 3. All inventory material shall be maintained securely and be accessible to the public, and shall be updated periodically to reflect changes, alterations and demolitions; and
 4. There shall be a building by building survey and inventory for each historic district and completed survey materials for each landmark site designated by ordinance.
- D. The local government shall provide for adequate public participation in the local historic preservation program including the process of recommending properties to the National Register.
1. All meetings of the Commission shall be open to the public;
 2. Careful minutes shall be kept of all the decisions and actions of the Commission, including the reasons for making these decisions. The minutes must be kept on file and available to the public in accordance with the provisions of the Public Records Act of the State of Mississippi, Section 25-1-17 (1972); and Section 304 of the National Historic Preservation Act, as amended (16 U.S.C. 470 et seq.)
 3. The local government shall strive to promote public participation in the nomination of properties to the National Register. Written information outlining the criteria for eligibility for nomination to the National Register and the National Register nomination process shall be available to the public. All reports submitted by the local government to the MDAH/SHPO regarding the eligibility of properties shall include assurances of public input. The local government shall retain a list of all persons contacted during the evaluation period in addition to comments which they receive. If a public meeting was held regarding the

nomination of properties to the National Register, a list of persons attending shall be included in the report.

- E. The local government shall satisfactorily perform the responsibilities (in Rule 8.3 A-D above and those specifically) delegated to it by the MDAH/SHPO.
 - 1. The local government may assume additional responsibilities as agreed to by the MDAH/SHPO and the local government. This agreement shall be in written form.
 - 2. The MDAH/SHPO shall have a reasonable opportunity to review all records and materials pertinent to the implementation of this rule.

- F. All functions performed by local governments to achieve and maintain certification must be in accord with the responsibilities of the State Historic Preservation Program as implemented by the MDAH/SHPO. These responsibilities are to:
 - 1. Direct and conduct a comprehensive survey of historic properties and maintain an inventory of such properties.
 - 2. Identify and nominate eligible properties to the National Register of Historic Places and otherwise administer applications for the National Register.
 - 3. Prepare and implement a comprehensive statewide historic preservation planning process.
 - 4. Administer the state program of Federal assistance for historic preservation within the state.
 - 5. Advise and assist federal, state, and local government agencies in carrying out their historic preservation responsibilities.
 - 6. Cooperate with the Secretary of the Interior, the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation, and other federal, state, and local government agencies to ensure that historic properties are taken into consideration at all levels of planning and development.
 - 7. Provide public information, education, training, and technical assistance relating to the National and State Historic Preservation programs; and otherwise fulfill the state's liaison responsibility with the Federal preservation programs, other states, local governments, Indian tribes, private organizations, and individuals.
 - 8. Cooperate with local governments in the development of local historic preservation programs and assist local governments in becoming certified.

- G. The local government agrees to comply with all provisions of the State Antiquities Law (39-7-1, et seq. of the Mississippi Code of 1972, as amended). In the event of any

proposed public actions that may affect designated “Mississippi Landmarks,” or properties potentially eligible for “Mississippi Landmark” designation, the local government shall, in writing, seek a permit for such actions from the Mississippi Department of Archives and History prior to undertaking the proposed actions. Furthermore, the local government agrees to comply with the Mississippi Department of Archives and History’s recommendations for “Mississippi Landmark” designations, permits, and/or cultural resource survey requirements.

- H. The local government agrees to comply with all provisions of Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act and 36 CFR 800 regulations and shall, in its comprehensive planning, give due consideration for assisting the State Historic Preservation Office (Mississippi Department of Archives and History) in executing its responsibilities to review the impact of projects involving federal funds or licensing on properties listed on the National Register of Historic Places, or that are determined to be eligible for listing in the National Register. The local government agrees, to the extent possible, to work with local applicants, seeking federal funding, licensing, or assistance in the preparations of necessary documentation requested by the State Historic Preservation Office for its Section 106 and 36 CFR 800 reviews.

For further information, please refer to the National Historic Preservation Act and the Mississippi State Historic Preservation Office.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, 39-13-9, 25-1-17, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 8.4 Process for Certifying Local Governments.

- A. To initiate the process of Certifying a local government for participation in the CLG program, the chief elected official of the local government shall request recognition as a Certified Local Government from the MDAH/SHPO. The application for certification shall be in the format established by the MDAH/SHPO and shall include the following:
 - 1. A written assurance by the chief elected official that the local government fulfills the requirements of Rule 8.3 above;
 - 2. A copy of the local historic preservation ordinance which creates the Historic Preservation Commission, along with resumes for each commission member and confirmation that they have been appointed to the commission;
 - 3. A list of locally designated landmarks, landmark sites and districts, together with maps indicating their locations and copies of the local ordinance(s) so designating them, if the local government has made such designations prior to certification.
- B. The MDAH/SHPO shall respond to the chief elected official within sixty days of receipt of an adequately documented written request. Application for certification shall be reviewed by the SHPO, or designee, and SHPO staff. If the request from the chief elected official is not adequately documented, the MDAH/SHPO shall request the needed

documentation within sixty business days of receipt of the request. If the request from the chief elected official is adequately documented, the SHPO, or designee, and the SHPO staff shall review the application for certification and determine if the local government fulfills the requirements for certification.

- C. When a local government application for certification has been approved in accordance with the MDAH/SHPO's approved certification process, the MDAH/SHPO shall prepare a written agreement that lists the specific responsibilities of the local governments when certified.

This written certification agreement shall include the responsibilities outlined in Rule 8.3 (A), (B), (C), and (D), and additional responsibilities delegated to all CLGs in the state, and any other delegated responsibilities.

The State Historic Preservation Officer and the Chief elected official shall both sign the written certification agreement.

- D. When the MDAH/SHPO determines that the local government fulfills the requirements for certification, the MDAH/SHPO shall forward a copy to the Secretary of the Interior or designee the following items:

1. a letter from the SHPO requesting certification;
2. a completed checklist indicating that all requirements have been met; and
3. a signed copy of the certification agreement.

If the Secretary of the Interior, or designee, does not take exception to the request for certification within fifteen working days of receipt, the local government shall be regarded as certified, and the MDAH/SHPO shall so notify the local government. The effective date of certification is the date of approval by the Department of the Interior.

- E. When a local government application for certification cannot be approved in accordance with the MDAH/SHPO's approved certification process, the MDAH/SHPO shall advise the local government as to how it can meet the requirements of the certification process.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, 39-13-9, 25-1-17, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 8.5 Process for Monitoring and Decertification of Certified Local Governments in Mississippi.

- A. The MDAH/SHPO shall conduct periodic review and monitoring of CLGs no less often than once every four years. The review shall ensure that each CLG is fulfilling its required responsibilities and that the CLG's performance of those responsibilities is consistent and coordinated with the criteria as listed in Rule 8.3 and 8.4 (A) (1-3) above. The MDAH/SHPO may perform its review during an on-site visit.

- B. Upon completion of the review, the MDAH/SHPO shall inform the CLG by letter, whether or not the CLG has been evaluated as adequate or inadequate. At this time the MDAH/SHPO may offer opinions and advice on each CLG program. An adequate evaluation by the MDAH/SHPO requires no response from the CLG.
- C. If the MDAH/SHPO evaluation indicated that the performance of the CLG is inadequate because the CLG has not maintained the specific criteria as listed in Rule 8.4 (A) (1-5) above, the MDAH/SHPO shall document that assessment and recommend to the CLG when the CLG's performance is inadequate. Generally, the CLG shall have a period of not less than thirty, not more than one hundred and eighty working days to implement improvements. If after this period, the MDAH/SHPO determines through documentation that the CLG has not regained nor cannot be expected to maintain the specific criteria as listed in Rule 8.4 (A) (1-5), the MDAH/SHPO shall place the CLG on suspension. While on suspension the CLG may not apply for or receive CLG grants. If the CLG has not addressed these issues within six months, the MDAH/SHPO shall send the appropriate documents citing specific reasons for the recommendations to decertify to the Secretary of the Interior, or designee. Copies of the correspondence between the MDAH/SHPO and the Secretary of the Interior shall be sent to the CLG. The effective date of decertification will be the date on which the decertification is approved by the Department of the Interior.
- D. CLGs may appeal to the National Park Service, or designee, the MDAH/SHPO's decisions to decertify.
- E. CLGs may petition the MDAH/SHPO to be decertified voluntarily and without prejudice.
- F. In the event that a CLG is voluntarily or involuntarily decertified, the MDAH/SHPO acknowledges its responsibilities to conduct financial assistance close-out procedures as specified in the HPF grants manual.
- G. If the CLG wishes to become recertified it must reapply for certification.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, 39-13-9, 25-1-17, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 8.6 CLG Participation in the National Register Process. The CLG will be involved in the National Register process in the following manner:

- A. Unless the CLG itself has initiated the nomination, the MDAH/SHPO will forward a copy of completed National Register nominations to the CLG for all properties within that jurisdiction within sixty (60) days of receipt of the nomination by MDAH.

The CLG shall submit a statement to the MDAH/SHPO regarding the eligibility of each property or district proposed for nomination to the National Register within its jurisdiction. This statement shall include the recommendation of the Commission and must include the opinion of the chief elected official or governing body. The statement

may be as simple as an affirmation that the property is eligible, or it may be a lengthy research report stating why the property should not be nominated. The statement or report should concentrate on the property's eligibility under the National Register of Historic Places criteria. Guidelines on how to apply these criteria in the evaluation of an individual property will be provided by the MDAH/SHPO. Reference could also be made to the CLG's historic preservation plan or other relevant planning documents. A copy of the report prepared by the CLG for the MDAH/SHPO shall be made available within the local jurisdiction for public inspection.

If the CLG does not provide a statement in a timely fashion, the nomination will be processed. However, frequent failure to submit statements on the eligibility of properties nominated within the jurisdiction of the CLG after the MDAH/SHPO has informed the CLG of a pending nomination will be considered during the next scheduled performance evaluation and may have an effect on the community's continued certification.

- B. Within sixty (60) days of the date of the nomination is forwarded to the CLG, after providing a reasonable opportunity for public comments, the Commission shall prepare, and the chief elected official or local coordinating official shall transmit to the MDAH/SHPO and the property owner(s), a statement reflecting the CLG's opinion regarding the eligibility of the property. If the Commission and chief elected official or governing body do not agree, both opinions shall be forwarded.
- C. If both the Commission and the chief elected official or governing body recommend that a property not be nominated because the property does not meet National Register of Historic Places criteria, the MDAH/SHPO will so inform the property owner(s) and the Mississippi Historic Preservation Professional Review Board (Review Board), and the property will not be nominated unless an appeal is filed within sixty (60) days with the MDAH/SHPO under the regulation established for the appeals process which is outlined in Section 101 (c) (2) of the National Historic Preservation Act (and in the State Program Manual).
- D. If either or both the Commission and the chief elected official governing body agree that the property meets National Register of Historic Places eligibility criteria, and when the National Register nomination is professionally and technically sufficient to meet National Register standards as interpreted by the MDAH/SHPO, the nomination will be transmitted for review to the Review Board. The opinion or opinions of the Commission and the chief elected official/governing body will be presented to the Review Board at that time for its consideration.
- E. After considering all opinions, the State Review Board shall make its recommendation to the MDAH/SHPO, who will then make a final determination regarding submission of the nomination to the Keeper of the National Register pursuant to Section 101 (a) of the Act and 36 CFR 60.6. The Commission, the chief elected official/governing body, the property owner, or any member of the public may appeal the final SHPO decision directly to the Keeper under the provisions outlined in 36 CFR 60.12

In order to expedite the nomination process, a CLG may elect to send a supporting letter with the nomination when it is first submitted to the MDAH/SHPO. The letter should be signed by both the chief elected official and the authorized representative of the Commission. The letter may be accompanied by a formal report, but should, at the least, clearly state that in their opinion the property is eligible for the National Register.

Upon written agreement between the CLG and the MDAH/SHPO, the CLG may elect to have all National Register nominations within their jurisdiction acted upon locally before being submitted to MDAH. In this case, copies of any nominations received by MDAH without having first been acted upon by the CLG will be provided to the CLG, and no action will be taken by MDAH until the CLG has acted upon the nomination. If the city has not acted upon the nomination within sixty (60) days, the applicant may resubmit it to MDAH for action.

Upon written agreement between the CLG and the MDAH/SHPO, the CLG may elect to assume responsibility for notification of property owners and the public throughout the nomination process. In this case, it will be the responsibility of the CLG to meet the public notice requirements specified by the National Register nomination procedures of the Department of the Interior. In addition to the requirement for public input into the above reporting requirement and notification to property owners regarding the CLG's opinion concerning the National Register eligibility of their property, the CLG will be responsible for notifying property owners, other local government agencies, and county and/or regional planning agencies as appropriate throughout the nomination process and for providing MDAH/SHPO with copies of all notification notices. Unless otherwise stated in the agreement, the MDAH/SHPO will provide notification of nominations to the National Park Service, certified local program organizations, and appropriate federal and state officials.

Participation in the notification procedures throughout the nomination process will provide the CLG with greater opportunity for public input and for resolving local differences of opinion prior to submission of the nomination to the Review Board.

If a CLG assumes the notification responsibilities, the MDAH/SHPO will provide guidelines regarding persons to be contacted and the content and timing of the notification letters. The CLG will maintain on file records documenting the notification actions that are taken.

- F. CLG notification procedures do not apply when a Federal agency nominates a property under its ownership or control. CLGs are encouraged to coordinate with Federal agencies to the extent practical, however, in the consideration of such nominations.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, 39-13-9, 25-1-17, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 8.7 Subgranting of Historic Preservation Funds to Certified Local Governments. In order to be eligible to receive a portion of the local share of the Historic Preservation Fund (HPF) allocation in Mississippi, the Secretary of the Interior requires that each certified local government;

- A. Shall maintain adequate financial management systems which:
 - 1. Shall be in accordance with the standards specified in the Office of Management and Budget (OMB) Circular A-102, attachment G, “Standards for Grantee Financial Management System”;
 - 2. Are auditable in accordance with the OMB circular A-133 “Audit Requirements.”
- B. Shall adhere to all requirements of the Historic Preservation Grants Manual:
 - 1. Indirect costs may be charged as part of the CLG grant only if the CLG subgrantee meets the requirements of the Manual.
 - 2. Unless the CLG has a current indirect cost rate approved by the appropriate Federal agency, only direct costs may be charged.
- C. Shall adhere to any requirements mandated by Congress regarding the use of such historic preservation funds.

The MDAH/SHPO is prepared to provide information about and assistance with the financial management systems which meet the requirements listed above.

All CLGs (except those on suspended status during the Federal Fiscal Year the grants are awarded) shall be eligible to receive funds from the HPF grant award, and at least ten percent of the MDAH/SHPO’s annual HPF allocation shall be designated for transfer by the MDAH/SHPO to CLGs. In any year in which the annual HPF State grant appropriation exceeds \$65,000, one-half of the excess shall also be transferred to CLGs according to procedures to be provided by the Secretary of the Interior.

The MDAH/SHPO is not required to award funds to all governments that are eligible to receive funds.

All SLGs receiving HPF grants from the MDAH/SHPO CLG share shall be considered subgrantee of the State of Mississippi.
The transferred grants to CLGs generally shall not be matched by any other Federal grants.

Each written grant agreement between the MDAH/SHPO and the CLG for the transfer of funds shall specify the requirements to be met by the CLG.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, 39-13-9, 25-1-17, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 8.8 Funding Priority. In order to promote local preservation activities to the greatest extent possible, the Mississippi Department of Archives and History (MDAH) will seek to ensure that the designated funds are distributed to qualified CLGs without prejudice and shall make

reasonable efforts to distribute the funds among the maximum number of eligible CLGs to the extent that such distribution is consistent with federal regulation. When possible, MDAH shall distribute these funds to create a geographic balance and to ensure a reasonable distribution between Mississippi's urban and rural areas. No CLG shall receive a disproportionate share of the allocation.

The SHPO, or designee, shall review and evaluate each proposal and shall recommend to the Board of Trustees of the MDAH the award of funds on a competitive basis to CLGs based on the following general priorities.

- A. Projects that revitalize the community's historic downtown commercial core.
- B. Projects that revitalize the community's historic neighborhoods.
- C. Projects that conserve historic rural resources, including the farms and plantation settings, and any other historic resources and the completion of survey activities.
- D. Projects that emphasize the identification of historic resources and the completion of survey activities.
- E. Projects that emphasize the completion of evaluation; i.e. nomination of resources to the National Register.
- F. Projects that emphasize the education of the general public about historic preservation.
- G. Projects that emphasize the education of the Historic Preservation Commission, including the preparation of guidelines for the Commission.
- H. Projects that offer creative, viable ways to implement the preservation of Mississippi's prehistoric and historic resources. MDAH shall ensure that when such proposals are submitted they will be reviewed and evaluated without prejudice.
- I. Other priorities set by MDAH.

These funding priorities are subject to change within the evolution of Mississippi's comprehensive historic preservation planning process. If these priorities do change, CLGs will be advised of the new priorities.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, 39-13-9, 25-1-17, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 8.9 Criteria for Selection. The MDAH/SHPO shall allocate the CLG share of its annual HPF grant to eligible CLGs in the following manner.

- A. Each CLG shall submit written proposals for the use of Mississippi's HPF CLG grant share to the MDAH/SHPO.

- B. The SHPO, or designee, and the SHPO staff shall review and evaluate these proposals, and recommend grant awards to the Board of Trustees of the MDAH based on the following criteria. The proposal must:
1. Clearly state specific, tangible goals for the CLG that are realistically attainable within the funding period; i.e., all proposals must show that the amount of funding requested will produce a specific impact, and that the funds awarded will be sufficient to generate a specific, tangible impact, directly as a result of the funds transferred. The requirement for tangible results of these grants may not be waived.
 2. Provide to MDAH assurance of an acceptable non-federal matching share (50%) as required by MDAH.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, 39-13-9, 25-1-17, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 8.10 The Role of the MDAH/SHPO in the CLG Program. Within the CLG program, the MDAH/SHPO assumes many responsibilities, both to the federal government and to the certified local governments. The responsibilities of the MDAH/SHPO include, but are not limited to, the following:

- A. The MDAH/SHPO shall make available to the public, upon request, the rationale for the CLG applicants selected, and the amounts of grants awarded. This information may be provided in written format.
- B. The MDAH/SHPO acknowledges that it is responsible, through financial audit, for the proper accounting of HPF CLG share monies in accordance with the Office of Management and Budget Circular A-133 “Audit Requirements.”
- C. As indicated in Rule 8.4 (A), during its periodic evaluation of CLGs, the MDAH/SHPO shall perform an assessment of the fiscal management of HPF monies.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, 39-13-9, 25-1-17, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 8.11 Application Timetable.

- A. Each year, as the time approaches for the annual appropriation of federal historic preservation funds, MDAH/SHPO will send a letter to CLGs to inform them of the upcoming grant cycle and to request that they submit notices-of-intent for proposed CLG grant projects.
- B. After passage of the annual federal Historic Preservation Fund appropriation by Congress, MDAH/SHPO will be notified by the Department of the Interior of the state’s projected allocation (planning figure) for that fiscal year. This usually occurs after October 1 each year but varies depending on when Congress and the President finalize the annual Federal budget.

- C. MDAH/SHPO then notifies the certified local governments of amount of funds available for the CLG grant program and provides a form for CLGs to use in applying for grant funds.
- D. Following a reasonable length of time after notification of the availability of CLG grant funds, MDAH/SHPO receives applications from certified local governments.
- E. At the next scheduled quarterly meeting of the Board of Trustees of MDAH, the Board selects the Projects to be funded.
- F. After MDAH/SHPO receives formal obligation of federal funds from the Department of the Interior, MDAH/SHPO notifies the local governments of grant awards.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-13-3, 39-13-5, 39-13-7, 39-13-9, 25-1-17, 39-7-1 (1972, as amended).

Part 3 Chapter 9: Geographic Information System (GIS Fee Schedule)

(Adopted by the Board of Trustees on April 16, 2010)

Rule 9.1. MDAH has been working with the Geospatial Group and ITS to develop the Geographic Information System. This application will move the Archaeological and Architectural data that is currently stored on paper maps into a digital media. This will allow us to combine the spatial data that is on the paper maps with the tabular databases such as the Mississippi Landmarks, the National Register, the Mississippi Archaeological Sites File, and the Archaeological Survey Reports to perform complex queries to learn more from our data. The GIS application will also allow us to get our data out to Federal and State Agency faster in cases of natural disasters. It will also allow persons doing Section 106 compliance work to have access to our data online so they do not have to travel to our office to perform their background research on their Section 106 project area.

Because the locations of most of these sites are restricted from public access, we have designed three levels of access to the public. The first is Public Access. From this level a person would be able to find information about Mississippi Landmarks and National Register Properties. The second (Subscriber 1) would have access to see all the data that was in public as well as important rural architectural properties and have the ability to submit properties to the Historic Resource Inventory Database. The third level (Subscriber 2) would have full access to all the data in the GIS both Archaeological and Architectural and have the ability to submit properties to the Historic Resource Inventory Database. Subscriber 1 and Subscriber 2 users will have to be approved by Historic Preservation staff.

Since the GIS application will be housed at ITS, we need a way to offset the monthly fees that ITS is charging MDAH. In order to do this, we recommend adoption of the following annual access fees for those approved to utilize the GIS application:

Subscriber 1:	\$ 100
Subscriber 2	\$ 1,300

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-5-1, 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Part 3 Chapter 10: Historic Preservation Division Fee Schedule
(Adopted by the Board of Trustees on January 15, 2010)

Rule 10.1.

- A. Photocopies: The charge for photocopies is \$0.25 per page.
- B. Digital Images/Printing (Payment in advance is required):

Type	Cost
300 ppi TIFF(s) on CD-R (scan only)	\$7.00 each
5 x 7 print(s) on archival photo paper (scanned and printed)	\$8.00 each
8 x 10 print(s) on archival photo paper (scanned and printed)	\$9.00 each
5 x 7 print(s) on archival paper from digital image (no scan)	\$4.50 each
8 x 10 print(s) on archival paper from digital image (no scan)	\$5.50 each

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-5-1, 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Part 3 Chapter 11: Guidelines for Archaeological Investigations and Reports in Mississippi.

(Adopted by the Board of Trustees on July 23, 1999; Amended July 20, 2001)

Abstract. The Mississippi Department of Archives and History (MDAH)/Mississippi State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO) has written more comprehensive guidelines to assist archaeologists and other individuals and institutions responsible for Section 106 and Antiquities Law compliance in the state. These guidelines address: professional qualifications, laboratory and curation facilities, treatment of human remains, terrestrial and underwater archaeological research, and report preparation. As cultural resource management laws and regulations, archaeological theory and techniques, and the public's attitude toward cultural resources change, the document itself will evolve to reflect them. For now, however, it is hoped these guidelines will assist archaeologists and agency administrators in developing research designs that will serve to produce sufficient amounts of data to identify and evaluate cultural resources and when needed to develop and implement appropriate mitigation proposals.

Introduction. The purpose of this document is to assist archaeologists, other professionals, and agency administrators involved in cultural resource management (CRM) (as defined by the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966, as amended) with the development and implementation of adequate statements of objectives or research designs for archaeological investigations in Mississippi (see Schiffer and Gumerman 1977:190). MDAH-SHPO will use

these guidelines when reviewing Cultural Resource Management (CRM) reports, and omissions from the procedures recommended herein may be grounds for rejecting reports or requiring further field, laboratory, or background work. However, it must be emphasized that the following guidelines are not intended as a “cookbook” or comprehensive step-by-step instruction manual governing archaeological investigations in the State of Mississippi. A variety of available literature on CRM (e.g., Bense et al. 1986), other states’ guidelines (e.g. Alabama Historical Commission 1996; Davis 1982; Georgia State Historic Preservation Office 1993; Harper and Fielder 1995; McGahey n.d.; New Jersey State Historic Preservation Office 1990; Pennsylvania Historical and Museum Commission 1991; South Carolina State Historic Preservation Office n.d.; Tennessee Division of Archaeology 1997; and Texas Historical Commission 1995), and requests for proposals (e.g., Bruce et al. 1998; Carr et al. 1998; Moore 1996a; 1996b) were used to develop this document and should be consulted for additional insights on how to proceed with cultural resource investigations. Other relevant documents include the Secretary of the Interior’s “Standards and Guidelines for Archeology and Historic Preservation” and “Standards for Treatment of Archeological Properties,” the National Park Service’s “Guidelines for Recording Historic Ships,” and the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation’s “Working with Section 106” series (see Reference Section). Sections 106 and 110 of the National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA) of 1966, as amended, require federal land management agencies and others receiving federal funds, licenses, or permits for land alteration projects to consider the impact of their agency’s actions on cultural resources that are located within their project’s area of potential effects. Usually this consists of identifying properties or sites, determining if they are eligible for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places, as well as assessing the effects of the project, if any, on the resources. How does one go about this task? According to the Section 106 implementing regulations (see 36 CFR 800), there are no specific rules governing the identification and evaluation process, only that agencies exercise a “reasonable and good faith effort” to identify all significant resources (Advisory Council on Historic Preservation 1986:20).

While NHPA is an important management tool, agencies or individuals participating in such projects should also be in compliance with numerous other laws and regulations governing cultural resources. These include, but are not limited to: Executive Order 11593; the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) of 1969, as amended; Department of the Interior regulations 36 CFR 60, 36 CFR 63, 36 CFR 66, and 36 CFR 79; Native American Graves Protection and Repatriation Act (NAGPRA), and the Mississippi Antiquities Law (39-7-3 et seq. of the Mississippi Code of 1972), as amended.

This document provides guidance on several topics relevant to the profession, including qualifications, curation of recovered data, treatment of human remains, terrestrial and underwater archaeological fieldwork, and report preparation. However, those required to conduct cultural resource investigations should consider the relevant legislation and scopes of work governing the action as the primary source of information on how to proceed, not this document.

Projects of different levels require differing stages of cultural resource investigation. For our purposes, terrestrial and underwater archaeologists utilize three basic phases of research: Phase I-cultural resources survey; Phase II-site testing and evaluation; and Phase III-mitigation. Each of these phases, primarily Phases II and III, should be approached within the context of a

research design that will contribute to a better knowledge and understanding of Mississippi's past.

During Phase I investigations qualified archaeologists locate archaeological sites through a variety of survey techniques and remote-sensing technologies. For the purposes of these guidelines, archaeological sites are defined as physical locations containing concentrations or spatial clustering of data, such as artifacts, ecofacts, and features, produced or modified by humans (Ashmore and Sharer 1988:219; Thomas 1989:649). These locations may be prehistoric, historic, or both, as well as on land (terrestrial) or underwater. Phase I survey techniques may include visual surface examination, subsurface shovel testing and screening, or a combination of both. The techniques and remote-sensing technologies employed during the survey and the amount of research conducted (sampling) are dependent upon numerous factors (e.g., project size and accessibility, terrestrial or underwater locations). Each factor should receive equal consideration when developing a survey strategy, keeping in mind that each situation is unique, and that the research design should be flexible and adaptable as the situation necessitates.

Once an archaeological site has been located, archaeologists need to define its boundaries, identify the possible effects of the proposed project on the site, and determine whether additional investigations are necessary to determine National Register eligibility. If, as a result of Phase I investigations, a site's eligibility status remains unknown or undetermined and it will be affected, additional investigations will be required. Phase II research then begins to assess the nature and integrity of the cultural deposits. Testing techniques may involve controlled surface collecting, limited underwater diving, the excavation of test units (e.g., 1x1 meter, 2x2 meter), deep soil core sampling, and mechanized trenching, all dependent upon the situation. These techniques should adequately sample the site and generate sufficient data, enabling the archaeologist to determine if the property is eligible for inclusion in the National Register. Sampling strategies and testing techniques employed during this phase of research should consider a variety of factors, such as site size, location, disturbance, accessibility, and artifact density and distribution. Each factor should receive equal consideration when developing a testing strategy, keeping in mind that each situation is unique, and that the research design should be flexible and adaptable as the situation necessitates.

National Register Bulletins 15 (*How to Apply the National Register Criteria for Evaluation*), 16A (*How to Complete the National Register Registration Form*), 20 (*Nominating Historic Vessels and Shipwrecks to the National Register of Historic Places*), and 36 (*Guidelines for Evaluating and Registering Historical Archeological Sites and Districts*) provide additional information to archaeologists and agencies charged with determining site eligibility. Copies of all National Register Bulletins can be obtained by writing the:

<p>National Register of Historic Places U.S. Department of Interior, National Park Service P.O. Box 37127, Washington D.C. 20013-7127.</p>
--

Additionally, archaeologists and agency administrators may also want to consult the 1995 supplement to *CRM*, volume 18, no. 6, that provides several relevant articles on the National Register and archaeology.

The last phase of archaeological research is Phase III-mitigation. Once a property has been determined eligible for the National Register by the archaeologist and SHPO, the archaeologist must make recommendations to the site's management agency or landowner on how to preserve the data contained in the site. The first option should involve redesigning the project in hopes of avoiding the eligible property altogether. However, if project modification is not an option, then the archaeologist will need to create a research design that preserves the significant data through retrieval, reporting, and curation. The archaeological techniques selected for this action are dependent upon numerous factors, including the specifics of what makes the site significant, and should be outlined in a Memorandum of Agreement. The following sections will elaborate on these phases of investigations.

Rule 11.1 Professional Qualifications. MDAH-SHPO requires individuals or groups conducting federally-funded archaeological research, or research as a result of federal or state permits and licenses in the State of Mississippi, to meet the minimum professional qualifications outlined in the Secretary of the Interior's *Standards and Guidelines, Archaeology and Historic Preservation's* "Professional Qualifications Standards" (*Federal Register* vol. 48, no. 190, 9-29-83, Part IV, pg. 44738-44739). Throughout the duration of the archaeological investigation, either the Principal Investigator or Field Director should be present in the field directing and monitoring the activities of the Field Crew. To meet the minimum professional qualifications in archaeology:

A. The *Principal Investigator* must:

1. have a graduate degree in anthropology, archaeology, or closely related field, plus:
2. At least one year of full-time professional experience or equivalent specialized training in archaeological research, administration or management;
3. At least four months of supervised field and analytic experience in general North American archaeology; and
4. Demonstrated ability to carry research to completion.

In addition to these minimum qualifications, a Principal Investigator in prehistoric archaeology shall have at least one year of full-time professional experience at a supervisory level in the study of archaeological resources of the prehistoric period. A Principal Investigator in historic archaeology shall have at least one year of full-time professional experience at a supervisory level in the study of archaeological resources of the historic period.

- B. The *Field Director/s* should also have a graduate degree in anthropology, archaeology, or closely related field, and have considerable experience and demonstrated ability to successfully function in a supervisory capacity. This person should possess formal training and considerable experience in archaeological theory, methodology, analysis, interpretation, and report preparation, and have demonstrated the ability to recognize and evaluate both historic and prehistoric cultural features.

- C. *Field Crew Member/s* should have an undergraduate degree in anthropology, archaeology, or closely related field, or possess considerable experience and have demonstrated the ability to recognize and evaluate both historic and prehistoric cultural features and artifacts.

- D. Any archaeologist conducting archaeological research (Phase I, II, and III) should have access to:
 - 1. adequate field and laboratory equipment to conduct the survey, excavation, or other research; and
 - 2. adequate facilities to properly treat, analyze, and temporarily curate cultural material obtained as a result of the investigation.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-7-3, 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 11.2 Consultant List. Effective August 1, 2001, MDAH-SHPO will maintain a consultant list comprised solely of archaeologists and companies who meet the Secretary of Interior's minimum Standards for archaeology. Also effective August 1, 2001, MDAH-SHPO will only accept reports (Phases I, II and III) resulting from section 106 or antiquities law projects from individuals or companies who meet these standards. Federal and State archaeologists performing cultural resource work for their respective agencies, however, are exempt from this policy. Furthermore, a policy regarding probationary and permanent removal from the consultant list has also been devised.

- A. Removal from List: Each consultant working in Mississippi is responsible for adhering to MDAH-SHPO's "Guidelines for Archaeological Investigations and Reports in Mississippi." When MDAH-SHPO receives a deficient report, the report will be "placed on hold," and the appropriate Federal agency, applicant, or licensee will be notified of its deficiencies. When the deficiencies are corrected, the report will receive clearance.

If a consultant's CRM reports are placed on hold three (3) times within one year, MDAH-SHPO will notify the consultant in writing and provide the consultant an opportunity for a hearing before the SHPO, Deputy SHPO, Chief Archaeologist, and Review and Compliance Officer before further actions, if necessary, are taken. If, at the conclusion of the hearing, a satisfactory explanation for the deficiencies has not been presented, the consultant's name will be removed from the list, and his/her reports will not be accepted by MDAH-SHPO for one (1) year. At the end of one year, the consultant may submit a written request to MDAH-SHPO to have his/her name reinstated to the list.

- B. Permanent Removal from List: Serious ethical and legal violations will result in the permanent removal of a consultant from the list and in the permanent refusal of MDAH-SHPO to accept the consultant's reports. Again, the consultant will be notified of the problem/s in writing and provided an opportunity for a hearing before the SHPO, Deputy SHPO, Chief Archaeologist, and Review and Compliance Officer to appeal the permanent removal.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-7-3, 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 11.3 Laboratory and Curation Guidelines. The following guidelines should be followed when preparing recovered archaeological materials and generated field records for curation:

A. Laboratory Guidelines:

1. Laboratory personnel should have an undergraduate degree in anthropology, archaeology, or closely related field, or possess considerable experience and demonstrated knowledge of standard analytical techniques, existing regional typologies, and the ability to recognize and evaluate both historic and prehistoric artifacts.
2. Standard analytical techniques and existing typologies, as appropriate for Southeastern prehistoric and historic archaeological studies, should be employed.
3. Proper stabilization and conservation techniques should also be employed.
4. All recovered cultural material should be cleaned, labeled, catalogued, and prepared for curation.

B. Curation Guidelines:

1. All cultural material, field notes, project records and photographs should be curated upon completion of the project in accordance with 36 CFR 79 ("Curation of Federally-Owned and Administered Archeological Collections") on acid free paper, as applicable.
2. The archaeological contracting firm should clean, label, and prepare all materials recovered during the study, and arrange for the transfer of recovered materials and records to a suitable Mississippi curation facility, when possible, preferably in the same region where the work was conducted, that meets or exceeds standards set forth in 36 CFR 79.
3. All artifacts recovered through underwater archaeological research should be treated in the field to stabilize and lessen deterioration. Standard cleaning and preservation procedures should be followed once artifacts are taken to the laboratory.

4. Due to additional problems and costs associated with proper artifact stabilization and long-term curation of submerged archaeological resources, these artifact collections should be kept to the absolute minimum necessary to make required assessments and determinations.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-7-3, 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 11.4 Treatment of Human Remains. It is the responsibility of the archaeologist to comply with all state and federal legislation (e.g., Mississippi Antiquities Law, Native American Graves Protection and Repatriation Act) concerning archaeological sites and the treatment of Native American human remains encountered during archaeological investigations. Additionally, some agencies have internal guidelines governing the treatment of human remains (e.g., USDA Forest Service's Human Remains Policy), and these should also be consulted when applicable. If non-Native American human remains are discovered, then the principal investigator should immediately notify the county coroner, sheriff, and/or board of supervisors to begin consultation. Should aboriginal human remains be discovered, archaeological activities (e.g., shovel testing, test excavations, mechanical stripping) should cease in that area. The field archaeologist should contact the governing/contracting agency for further instruction. In the absence of Federal involvement, if Native American burials are encountered on state, county, municipal or private land, the field archaeologist should contact MDAH-SHPO and apply for a burial excavation permit. Burial excavation permits may also be applied for in anticipation of encountering burials. Work may continue in the area once a burial excavation permit has been granted by MDAH-SHPO. Encountered aboriginal human remains shall be recorded, handled, and protected according to the stipulations stated in the permit.

Under the provisions of the State Antiquities Law (39-7-31), the Board of Trustees of MDAH is given the responsibility of considering and permitting, if deemed appropriate, the excavation of prehistoric or historic Indian burials. Specifically, 39-7-31 states:

No person without a permit from the board and without written permission of the landowner, shall intentionally injure, disfigure, remove, excavate, damage, take, dig into, or destroy any prehistoric or historic American Indian or aboriginal burial.

As stated in 39-7-3 (Declaration of Public Policy), it is the policy of the State of Mississippi and in the interest of the State to protect and preserve archaeological sites of every character. Burials in the context of the Antiquities Law are archaeological sites. They are, however, very special kinds of archaeological sites that are given additional legal protection by other laws. For this reason, burials are the only type of site for which MDAH-SHPO has legal authority on private property, except for "Mississippi Landmarks" for which this authority is voluntarily given by the landowner.

In order to prevent confusion and to establish clear directives, the following guidelines are instituted:

- A. No permit will be issued unless the excavation is to be performed or supervised by an archaeologist meeting the aforementioned professional qualifications. It is recommended that a physical anthropologist be present during the excavation to ensure the recovery of a maximum amount of pertinent information.
- B. A report, following the guidelines established in this document, detailing the findings of the excavation, including photographs and sketches, must be submitted to MDAH-SHPO within one year of completion of the excavation.
- C. If the burial/s in question is reasonably expected to be of a known, existing tribe, the written comments of that tribe shall be sought and, if obtained, submitted in written form to MDAH-SHPO when application is made for a permit.
- D. The remains are to be curated in a facility that meets or exceeds standards set forth in 36 CFR 79 or reburied after scientific analysis. The decision on whether to require reburial will be determined by MDAH-SHPO after reviewing documentation submitted with the request for a burial excavation permit (see Step 3).
- E. Permits to excavate burials will not be issued in most circumstances unless there is a threat to the integrity of the burial/s through vandalism, natural forces (e.g., erosion, inundation), or development that is clearly in the public interest.
- F. For purposes of these guidelines, a burial is understood to include the items that are interred with the body/human remains.
- G. In the event of the unintended discovery of burials during the course of an excavation, the encountered remains are to be recorded in such a manner as to minimize the loss of scientific data. A burial excavation permit is to be sought, if the archaeologist wishes to continue with the burial excavation/removal.
- H. MDAH-SHPO may, as it finds advisable, call for a written proposal from the applicant on the procedure for burial removal and reserves the right to deny the participation of any archaeologist. Such written proposals should address the adequacy of crew size and experience, laboratory and temporary curation facilities, as well as arrangements for long-term curation or reburial of remains.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-7-3, 39-7-31, 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 11.5 Terrestrial Archaeological Research. As previously stated, Sections 106 and 110 of the National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA) of 1966, as amended, require federal land management agencies and others receiving federal funds, licenses, or permits for land alteration projects to consider cultural resources within their project's area of potential effects. Usually this process consists of locating sites, determining if they are eligible for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places, as well as assessing the effects of the project, if any, on the resources. This does not mean every single site must be found. Instead, it means the responsible agency must make a reasonable and good faith effort to "consider all kinds of historic properties" in the project's area of potential effects (Section 301[7]; King 1998:62, 67). Therefore, research

designs and survey or testing methodologies should reflect this concept of “reasonable and good faith effort” (Advisory Council on Historic Preservation 1986:20).

The following section briefly outlines Phase I, II, and III techniques and guidelines that should assist archaeologists and agency administrators in developing research designs, primarily for Phases II and III, capable of retrieving sufficient amounts of data to identify and evaluate terrestrial cultural resources. Each phase should be approached within the context of a research design with project results contributing to a better knowledge and understanding of Mississippi’s past.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-7-1, 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 11.6 Create a Research Design for Terrestrial Cultural Resources.

- A. Create a Research Design: An explicit research design should govern all archaeological work, especially Phase II and III investigations. Prior to going into the field, a design or plan should be created addressing the justification and legitimacy of the proposed field work, as well as the techniques to be employed. Furthermore, the research design should reflect the needs of the sponsor, such as “how much area to look at and how much and what kinds of data to record” (Davis 1982:B-5).

In addition, each archaeologist must submit a scope of work to MDAH-SHPO for comment prior to conducting Phase I cultural resource surveys of 200 hectares (500 acres) or more. Scopes of work must also be submitted to MDAH-SHPO for comment before conducting any Phase II or III investigations. These documents should specify the types of cultural resources known or anticipated to be in the project’s area of potential effects, the field and/or archival techniques proposed, the projected number of field personnel required for the project, and the estimated time in the field.

- B. Conduct Literature Review/Records Check: Prior to investigations of terrestrial cultural resources, historical and archaeological records, literature, and archival sources should be examined to provide a cultural/historical context for the study area and to identify previously recorded archaeological or historical properties in or near the project area. The following is a brief list of sources maintained by MDAH-SHPO that should be consulted prior to conducting Phase I, II, and III terrestrial cultural resources investigations:

1. Mississippi Archaeological Site File (contains information on known sites)
2. Archaeological Maps (15’ and 7.5’ USGS Topographic Quadrangles) which contain information on known site locations, previous cultural resource surveys, etc.
3. Cultural Resources Survey reports and other applicable literature, such as the State Historic Context Document, *Mississippi Archaeology, Louisiana*

Archaeology, Journal of Alabama Archaeology, Arkansas Archeologist, Tennessee Anthropologist, Southeastern Archaeology, American Antiquity, etc.

4. Archaeological Subject File (supplemental data on recorded sites, such as artifact illustrations and photographs, site maps, newspaper articles, correspondence, etc.)
5. Deeds, Historic Maps, Aerial Photographs, and other Remote Sensing Data
6. National Register of Historic Places Files

C. Recordation:

1. Field notes should be maintained during the entire investigation and for all aspects of the project. If possible, all notes should be written or copied onto acid-free paper.
2. Significant archaeological sites and prominent features found should be photographed with color and black and white film. Although most black and white film types are fairly stable, most color films are not. Due to color film dye instability and short life expectancy, archaeologists are strongly encouraged to use Kodachrome slide film when photodocumenting sites for the permanent record. All photographs should be printed with a standard finish, such as matte, glossy, or satin and should be at least 3½ x 5 inches. Each photograph should be labeled with a permanent audio-visual marking pen or pencil. Adhesive labels should not be used on photographs because they can become detached. All original photographs, negatives and transparencies should be included with the curated materials. Digital images, regardless of the media, are not appropriate for the permanent record. For further advice concerning photographing significant archaeological sites refer to *National Register Bulletin 16A: How to Complete the National Register Form* and *National Register Bulletin 23: How to Improve the Quality of Photos for National Register Nominations*.
3. Maps of the project area should be maintained to record all areas investigated and sites located.

D. Phase I:

1. Terrestrial Cultural Resources Survey: The overall goal of a Phase I cultural resources survey is the location and evaluation of archaeological resources within a project's area of potential effects. If sites are found during this phase of research, sufficient information should be recovered to determine whether further investigations are necessary to assess National Register eligibility. Specific objectives of the Phase I cultural resources survey include:
 - a. a review of archaeological and historical records pertaining to the general project area;

- b.a complete field inspection to determine the presence, nature, and degree of integrity, if possible, of any archaeological remains within the project's area of potential effects; and
 - c.an evaluation of the potential impact of the project on the identified archaeological resources.
- 2. Fieldwork Guidelines: The areas surveyed and the methodologies employed should be decided on an individual project basis. The following list, however, provides basic guidelines that should assist the archaeologist in retrieving adequate information:
 - a.General:
 - i. The field survey must include a systematic pedestrian surface examination of all exposed ground surfaces, as well as shovel testing and screening of all vegetated ground surfaces in the entire area of potential effects.
 - ii. If predictive modeling is used during any part of the Phase I cultural resources survey, the model must be verified through field testing.
 - iii. Written records must be maintained throughout the course of the study.
 - iv. Photographic documentation of potentially significant archaeological resources identified in the project area should be maintained to record the geographical setting and land use (see Recordation section for information concerning photographs).
 - v. Representative artifact collections (i.e. all artifact forms, not just diagnostics) must be made from archaeological sites identified within the project area for the purposes of determining the site's temporal and cultural affiliations, as well as the functional and technological aspects of the assemblage.
 - vi. All previously recorded sites in the project area should be visited, if possible. Information on these sites should be updated in the form of a new site card.
 - vii. Gathering information from local informants about cultural resources in the project vicinity is encouraged. If possible, view, describe, and photograph private artifact collections obtained in or near the project area.

- viii. Past land alterations (e.g., plowing, timber activities, borrow pits, construction activities, erosion) in the project area of potential effects should be recorded.
- ix. Every shovel test, auger test, and other ground disturbance should be refilled upon completion of the survey unless consultation with participating agencies and/or landowners has produced an agreement to forego filling.
- x. Survey and site/s locations must be depicted on 7.5' USGS topographic maps.

b. Systematic Pedestrian Visual Surface Examination:

- i. Ground cover conditions must be described and the techniques of pedestrian survey specified.
- ii. A systematic pedestrian visual surface examination must be conducted in those portions of the project area, such as cultivated cropland, possessing good surface visibility.
- iii. In areas of good surface visibility, archaeologists should walk transects spaced at 15-30 meter (50-100 feet) intervals maximum. A transect spacing justification (e.g., ground visibility, density of archaeological sites in area, severely disturbed areas, inaccessibility) should be part of the cultural resources survey report.
- iv. While a surface collection may help determine horizontal site boundaries, it is not considered an adequate procedure for assessing site nature (i.e., depth, composition, possible integrity, etc.). Therefore, some subsurface investigations should also be conducted at the site.

c. Shovel Tests/Screening:

- i. Where the surface cannot be inspected with reasonable thoroughness, sub-surface testing must be conducted in all areas where archaeological sites are likely to occur.
- ii. The nature of any sub-surface testing must be discussed with size, depth, and spacing intervals of tests specified.
- iii. Shovel tests should be excavated at 30 meter (100 feet) intervals maximum across terrain with poor ground surface visibility.

- iv. Each shovel test, approximately 30x30 cm (12x12 inch) in diameter, should be excavated into sterile subsoil, if possible.
- v. Excavated soil should be screened through 6.35 mm (¼ inch) or smaller hardware cloth unless soil conditions make such screening impractical. When such soil conditions exist, the archaeologist should identify these conditions in the report and indicate the method of artifact recovery that was used.
- vi. When a positive shovel test is excavated, the testing interval should be reduced to 5 to 10 m with shovel testing continuing in a cruciform or grid pattern until two consecutive negative shovel tests are encountered. This method should assist in determining horizontal site dimensions and boundaries.
- vii. Records of each positive shovel test should be maintained, including their locations within the project area and the number and types of artifacts recovered from each shovel test. Artifacts encountered exclusively in disturbed zones or at any other depths should be noted. Additionally, it is important to record any negative findings encountered during the survey.
- viii. Unvegetated cultivated fields and land forms are not automatically exempt from shovel testing. Therefore, if shovel tests are not excavated, the principal investigator should justify the decision. Plowed fields should be shovel tested under the following conditions: poor artifact visibility (e.g., soil recently plowed, lack of rainfall), when in a dynamic depositional environment (e.g., adjacent to aggrading stream, creek, river), or artifacts observed on the surface.

d. Deep Soil Sampling:

- i. Principal investigators should conduct limited deep soil sampling, utilizing cores, augers, backhoes, etc., to locate and delimit cultural deposits deeply buried under alluvium, colluvium, and/or water. Deep soil sampling helps the archaeologist more thoroughly evaluate the project area by gathering site and soils information unobtainable through pedestrian visual surface examination and traditional shovel testing procedures.
- ii. Consultation with a geomorphologist or pedologist is encouraged if the principal investigator is not trained in or familiar with the geomorphology of the area.

- e. Other Methods: Archaeologists may also incorporate a variety of remote sensing techniques into the survey, such as ground penetrating radar (GPR), gradiometer, resistivity, conductivity, magnetometer, metal detecting, aerial photographs, multispectral imaging, etc. The research design should justify the use of these additional survey techniques.

E. Phase II:

1. Terrestrial Cultural Resources Testing and Evaluation: The primary objective of the Phase II investigation is to determine if the site in question is eligible for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places. Although archaeological site significance can be documented under National Register Criterion A (events), B (important persons), and C (design, construction, and work of a master), eligibility for most sites will probably be determined under Criterion D (information potential) or a combination of all the above (see National Register Bulletin 36). “In order to determine the significance of a site [under Criterion D], enough subsurface investigation must be done to establish the potential for information that can be used to formulate and answer research questions” in regard to a regional context (Bense et al. 1986:56). Investigation objectives include, but are not limited to, identifying:
 - a. the vertical and horizontal extent of intact archaeological deposits within each site;
 - b. the density and distribution of the archaeological deposits within each site;
 - c. the cultural affiliation of the components represented at each site;
 - d. the presence of undisturbed/relatively intact subsurface features or buried stratified deposits at each site;
 - e. the classes of archaeological remains retrievable; and
 - f. whether the site is eligible for inclusion in the National Register. Phase II investigations should not be initiated without consultation with MDAH-SHPO.
2. Fieldwork Guidelines: The fieldwork methodology and areas to be investigated should be decided on an individual site basis. The selected methodology should focus only on data relative to research questions of potential importance as they pertain to evaluating National Register significance. The following list provides basic guidelines that should assist the archaeologist in retrieving adequate information:
 - a. General:

- i. Written records and standardized forms should be maintained throughout the course of the study. Test units, features, soil profiles, and other identified anomalies should be photographically recorded.
- ii. All field investigations must use a permanent reference grid.
- iii. Every test excavation unit, auger test, backhoe trench, or other ground disturbance should be refilled upon completion of the testing project, unless consultation with participating agencies and/or landowners has produced an agreement to forego filling (e.g., preparation for Phase III mitigation).
- iv. Provide location of Phase II testing on 7.5' USGS topographic map.

b. Testing:

- i. Work conducted during the Phase I cultural resources survey should have identified the archaeological property's boundaries and artifact distribution and/or concentrations. However, if this is not the case, then the archaeologist may need to conduct limited clearing and/or plowing and disking of the site to enhance surface visibility. Some areas, such as forests, may preclude this step. Therefore, it is recommended additional shovel tests and screening be conducted in order to identify site boundaries. Upon completion of this task, the archaeologist should conduct a controlled surface collection utilizing a permanent reference grid. Areas in tree/bush lines may be investigated by excavating test units. Based on the results of the surface collection, shovel testing, and/or previous artifact/feature concentrations encountered during Phase I survey, a limited number of test units (based on site size, artifact distributions, land formations, etc.) should be manually excavated to determine the depth of the plowzone (or A horizon) and nature of subplowzone deposits and subsoil. All land clearing and testing activities should be justified in the report.
- ii. Excavated soil should be screened through 6.35 mm (¼ inch) or smaller hardware cloth (e.g., dry shaker screens or water screens). It is advisable to double screen feature fill or other complex deposits through a 1.58 mm (16th inch) fine hardware cloth to ensure retrieval of as much cultural material as possible (e.g., micro-debitage, archaeobotanical and zooarchaeological remains) (see also Flotation Sampling).

- iii. If deemed appropriate by the principal investigator, heavy equipment (e.g., backhoe, grader) may be used to remove selected portions of disturbed upper soil zones (e.g., plowzone) to expose possible intact buried deposits. Locations and orientation of trenches, depositional and pedogenic profiles for trenches, and stratigraphic evidence for integrity, or lack thereof, should be included in the report. However, it is important to note, that solely grading a site and looking for features is not considered an appropriate, effective, or scientific means of testing an archaeological site. Justification for conducting all mechanical tests should be included in the report.
 - iv. Typically, the sampling design should provide adequate sub-surface exposure (i.e., below plowzone or other identified initial soil level) of the site area as defined by surface and subsurface techniques (e.g., surface collections, shovel tests). Each site is different, and the archaeological methods used, the areas of the property tested, and the percentage of the site sampled in order to determine National Register eligibility should be decided on an individual site basis.
 - v. A justification of test excavation unit spacing and placement (e.g., artifact densities, presence of features) should accompany the Phase II testing report.
 - vi. Priority should be given to accurately mapping the distribution of subsurface features and deposits that have been revealed through testing (e.g., plan and profile illustrations; artifact piece plotting).
 - vii. A representative sample of subsurface cultural features and deposits should be excavated to determine temporal and cultural affiliations.
 - viii. Munsell soil color and texture data should be provided for all excavated units (by level) and features.
- c. Deep Soil Sampling: Limited deep soil sampling should be conducted at appropriate locations, if applicable, across the site in order to ensure proper coverage and to detect any deeply buried deposits that may exist.
- d. Flotation Sampling: Systematic flotation samples should be taken to provide a sample of artifacts less than 6.35 mm (¼ inch), such as archaeobotanical and zooarchaeological remains. Flotation samples provide an index not only of the presence of remains but also an indication of the density of material. The percentage of site (levels, features) sampled through flotation should be decided on an individual site basis.

- e. Chronometric Sampling: Systematic chronometric samples should be taken to provide information on the age of the site. Types of chronometric dating procedures include radiocarbon dating, archaeomagnetic dating, oxidizable carbon ratio, thermoluminescence, etc.
- f. Other Methods: Archaeologists may also incorporate a variety of remote sensing techniques into the survey, such as ground penetrating radar (GPR), gradiometer, resistivity, conductivity, magnetometer, metal detecting, aerial photographs, multispectral imaging, etc. The research design should justify using these additional survey techniques.

F. Phase III:

1. Mitigation of Terrestrial Cultural Resources: The mitigation of impacts or effects on a significant (i.e., National Register eligible) property can take several forms. For example, relocating, changing, or modifying the proposed project is one way to avoid impacting an eligible archaeological site. Although the site may not be preserved in the long run, this action can eliminate imminent impacts and adverse effects associated with the original project. This step incorporates the property into the project in a non-destructive manner.

However, when avoidance of a significant property is impractical and partial or total destruction is unavoidable, an agreement to conduct data recovery (i.e., extensive and in some cases complete site excavation) is usually reached (see Section 110b of NHPA). This plan is usually a continuation and expansion of Phase II activities. The data recovery plan should be detailed, discussing and justifying the design of the investigation which will retrieve the data, what research questions will be addressed, the proposed analysis and the expected results, and a justification for the expenditure of money on the data recovery project should be clearly stated. If the recovery plan is unusually complex, then a Memorandum of Agreement (MOA) between participating agencies should be developed. Mitigation recovery projects may not proceed without consultation with MDAH-SHPO and the development of the appropriate written agreement. Whatever is decided, this plan should be consistent with the principles set forth in “Consulting About Archeology Under Section 106,” the “Secretary of the Interior’s Standards and Guidelines for Historic Preservation Projects,” and the “Participants Desk Reference” issued by the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation in 1995.

2. Underwater Archaeological Research: Mississippi possesses a diverse range of submerged cultural resources, ranging from canoes and pirogues to steamboats, schooners, and ocean-going vessels, as well as prehistoric sites inundated through coastal subsidence. These archaeological sites receive the same level of protection as do terrestrial sites. In addition to the aforementioned laws (e.g., NEPA, NHPA) governing terrestrial site protection and mitigation, additional

legislation, such as the Abandoned Shipwreck Act of 1987, serve to further protect these important resources.

The following section briefly outlines Phase I, II, and III techniques and guidelines that should assist archaeologists and agency administrators in developing research designs capable of retrieving sufficient amounts of data in order to identify and evaluate submerged cultural resources, primarily sunken vessels. Each phase should be approached within the context of a research design with project results contributing to a better knowledge and understanding of Mississippi's past.

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-7-1, 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Rule 11.7 Create a Research Design for Submerged Cultural Resources.

- A. Create a Research Design: An explicit research design should govern all archaeological work, especially Phase II and III investigations. This design or plan should ask questions regarding the justification and legitimacy of the proposed field work, what is to be gained from this work prior to going into the field, and what techniques will be employed to complete the task. Furthermore, the research design should reflect the needs of the sponsor, such as “how much area to look at and how much and what kinds of data to record” (Davis 1982:B-5).

In addition, each archaeologist must submit a scope of work to MDAH-SHPO for comment prior to conducting Phase I cultural resource surveys of 200 hectares (500 acres) or more. The proposed scope of work must also be submitted to MDAH-SHPO for comment before conducting any Phase II or III investigations. These documents should specify the types of cultural resources known or anticipated to be in the project's area of potential effects, the field and/or archival techniques proposed, the projected number of field personnel required for the project, and the estimated time in the field.

- B. Conduct Literature Review/Records Check: Prior to investigations of submerged cultural resources, historical and archaeological records, literature (e.g., *Ways Packet Directory, 1848-1994*), and archival sources should be examined to provide a cultural/historical context for the study area, and to identify previously recorded archaeological or historical properties in or near the project area. The following is a brief list of sources maintained by MDAH-SHPO that should be consulted prior to conducting Phase I, II, and III submerged cultural resources investigations:
1. Mississippi Archaeological Site File (contains information on known sites)
 2. Archaeological Maps (15' and 7.5' USGS Topographic Quadrangles), which contain information on known site locations, previous cultural resource surveys, etc.

3. Cultural Resources Survey reports and other applicable literature, such as H.P. Owen's *Steamboats and the Cotton Economy*, *Mississippi Archaeology*, *Louisiana Archaeology*, *Journal of Alabama Archaeology*, *Tennessee Anthropologist*, *Southeastern Archaeology*, *American Antiquity*, etc.
4. Archaeological Subject File (supplemental data to recorded sites, such as artifact illustrations and photographs, site maps, newspaper articles, correspondence, etc.).
5. Deeds, Historic Maps, and Aerial Photographs.
6. National Register of Historic Places Files.

C. Recordation:

1. Field notes should be maintained during the entire investigation and for all aspects of the project. If possible, all notes should be written or copied onto acid-free paper.
2. Significant archaeological sites and prominent features (e.g., shipwrecks, docking facilities) with good visibility (e.g., low tide; clear water) should be photographed with color and black and white film. Although most black and white film types are fairly stable, most color films are not. Due to color film's instability and short life expectancy, archaeologists are strongly encouraged to use Kodachrome film when photodocumenting the site and research for the permanent record. All photographs should be printed with a standard finish, such as matte, glossy, or satin and should be at least 3½ x 5 inches. Each photograph should be labeled with a permanent audio-visual marking pen or pencil. Adhesive labels should not be used on photographs because the labels can become detached. All original photos, negatives, and transparencies should be included with the curated materials. Digital images, regardless of the media, are not appropriate for the permanent record. For further advice concerning photographing significant archaeological sites refer to National Register Bulletin 16A (*How to Complete the National Register Form and National Register*), 20 (*Nominating Historic Vessels and Shipwrecks to the National Register of Historic Places*), 23 (*How to Improve the Quality of Photos for National Register Nominations*).
3. Maps and scaled drawings of the project area and recorded anomalies should be maintained throughout the investigation. This is particularly important since many submerged cultural resources in Mississippi can not be photodocumented due to poor visibility associated with water turbidity.

D. Phase I:

1. Submerged Cultural Resources Survey: The overall goal of a Phase I submerged cultural resources survey is to locate and evaluate archaeological resources within the project's area of potential effects. During this phase of research, archaeologists need to recover sufficient information to determine whether further investigations at the site/s is necessary to address National Register eligibility. Specific objectives of the Phase I submerged cultural resources survey include:
 - a. a review and search of the archaeological and historical records pertaining to the general project area;
 - b. a field inspection and complete Phase I survey to determine the presence, nature and degree of integrity, if possible, of archaeological remains within the project's area of potential effect; and
 - c. an evaluation of the potential impact of the project on the identified archaeological resources.

2. Fieldwork Guidelines: The areas surveyed and the methodologies employed should be decided on an individual project basis. The following list, however, provides basic guidelines that should assist the archaeologist in retrieving adequate information:
 - a. General:
 - i. Each submerged and visible watercraft, as well as other cultural resources (e.g., bridges, structures) identified in the project's area of potential effects, should be recorded and preliminarily evaluated as to its National Register eligibility.
 - ii. Due to varying levels of survey complexity often associated with riverine and marine environments, such as water depths and poor visibility, remote-sensing technologies should be used. Remote-sensing technologies should include, but not be limited to, systematic magnetometer survey, bathymetric or fathometer survey, and side-scan sonar. All instrument data should be recorded in concert with a Differential Global Positioning System (GPS).
 - iii. A magnetometer survey will detect most anomalies in the project's area of potential effects. Archaeologists will need to conduct more detailed systematic magnetic surveys for all anomalies thought to be potentially significant. Analyses of the initial and more detailed magnetic surveys should provide the principal investigator with enough information to determine the identity of the anomaly and the potential for further testing.

- iv. If it is determined that additional testing of an anomaly is needed/required, then a side-scan sonar should be employed to enable the principal investigator to make a more precise determination regarding the anomaly's National Register potential. Side-scan sonar may be excluded from use when field conditions prohibit or dictate otherwise. In these instances, a justification for not using side-scan sonar must be discussed in the report. It is important that all generated data (side-scan sonar, magnetometer, etc.) be correlated in order to produce as accurate a survey result as possible.
 - v. Systematic water jet probing from the deck of the survey boat or adjacent banklines should be conducted to determine the location and extent of all identified submerged watercraft and other potentially significant underwater resources.
 - vi. All exposed watercraft elements should be fully recorded to the extent possible with a detailed discussion provided in the report.
 - vii. Survey and site/s locations must be depicted on 7.5' USGS topographic maps.
- b. Magnetometer, Bathymetric/Fathometer: Magnetometer and Bathymetric/Fathometer are remote sensing instruments that produce survey data capable of being downloaded into a computer database. There are two types of magnetometers currently used in the field of underwater research, a proton precession magnetometer and a cesium magnetometer. The proton precession magnetometer is probably sufficient for the Phase I cultural resource survey. Data collected from the magnetometer survey should be of sufficient precision and quality to allow for interpretations.
- c. Side-Scan Sonar: Archaeologists are encouraged to use as high a frequency side-scan sonar as possible, such as 500 kHz. Higher frequencies produce superior resolutions thereby allowing for better identification and interpretation of targets. While lower frequency side-scan sonars, such as 100 kHz, can produce good results, they do not produce the high quality results higher frequency side-scan sonars do. Again, archaeologists are encouraged to utilize a side-scan sonar capable of recording data that can be down loaded into a computer database (note: some side-scan sonars are equipped with video monitors, but are incapable of storing the generated data).
- d. Positioning Systems: A positioning system should be incorporated into all submerged cultural resources surveys, so archaeologists can easily map and relocate any targets encountered. To ensure precision during the remote sensing survey a ± 5 meter variance in positioning data is

suggested. In order to achieve this accuracy, the archaeologist should use either an on-shore total station or a Differential (or corrected) Global Positioning System (GPS). The on-shore total station may be more practical and feasible if: the survey area is limited in scope, the line of sight between shore and survey vessel is good, and/or there is a single target involved.

e. Remote Sensing Survey:

- i. Transect lane spacing should not exceed 30 meters (100 feet).
- ii. Positioning control points should be obtained at least every 30 meters (100 feet) along transects.
- iii. Background noise for the magnetometer data should not exceed ± 3 gammas.
- iv. Magnetic data should be recorded on the 100 gamma scale.
- v. The magnetometer sensor should be towed a minimum of 2.5 times the length of the boat or projected in front of the survey vessel to avoid vessel noise.
- vi. The survey should utilize the Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM) grid system when providing site and feature locations.
- vii. Additional, more tightly spaced transects should be run over all potentially significant anomalies.
- viii. Differential GPS survey control should be used to determine the exact locations of the magnetic anomalies or exposed watercraft.

f. Survey Intervals:

- i. Although interval spacing should be established on a case by case basis, it is recommended that magnetometer spacing not exceed 30 m (100 ft). This spacing increases the possibility of detecting the smallest of targets. A transect spacing justification (e.g., density of archaeological sites in area, inaccessibility) for all forms of remote sensing should accompany the cultural resources survey report.
- ii. Any magnetic target that produces an anomaly greater than 20 to 25 gammas, covers an area greater than 15 meters, or produces a complex signature should be viewed a second time. A justification for any subsequent viewing, or a decision not to

reexamine an anomaly such as this, must accompany the survey report.

- iii. Additional survey lines (normally perpendicular to the original survey) should be run across targets deemed to be of interest. These supplementary lines provide additional data on the character of the target, as well as aid in the development of magnetic contour maps.

g. Terrestrial Surveys:

- i. In some cases, a terrestrial survey of bank lines may provide supplementary data to the information generated during the underwater survey. Examples of such data include the locations of vessels partially covered by bank lines, associated structures such as docking or landing facilities, and sunken vessels abandoned at or near these facilities. In addition, terrestrial surveys provide access to shore lines deemed inaccessible by boat due to heavy vegetation or low water (For information concerning appropriate survey methods see Terrestrial Cultural Resources Survey section).
- ii. Archaeologists are also encouraged to use hand-held magnetometers when conducting these bank line and shallow water terrestrial surveys. This is especially true in river settings where magnetic targets are observed trending under the bank.

E. Phase II:

1. Submerged Cultural Resource Testing and Evaluation: The primary objective of the Phase II investigation is to determine if the site in question is eligible for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places (note: Phase I and II underwater investigations are sometimes combined into a single activity. The governing/contracting agency is responsible for ensuring that a scope of work exists in which the specific tasks are outlined and that the proper officials are notified). Unlike terrestrial archaeological sites, National Register eligibility for most submerged cultural resources will be determined using most of the established Criterion, as opposed to just Criterion D (see National Register Bulletin 36).

However, as with terrestrial sites, “In order to determine the significance of a site [under Criterion D], enough subsurface investigation must be done to establish the potential for information that can be used to formulate and answer research questions” in regard to a regional context (Bense et al. 1986:56). Investigation objectives include, but are not limited to:

- a. the vertical and horizontal extent of intact archaeological deposits within each site;
 - b. the density and distribution of the archaeological deposits within each site;
 - c. the cultural affiliation of the components represented at each site;
 - d. the presence of undisturbed submerged features or buried stratified deposits at each site;
 - e. the classes of archaeological remains retrievable; and
 - f. whether the site is eligible for inclusion in the National Register. Phase II investigations should not be initiated without consultation with MDAH-SHPO.
2. Fieldwork Guidelines: The fieldwork methodology and areas to be investigated should be decided on an individual project basis. However, the selected methodology should focus only on data relative to research questions of potential importance as they pertain to evaluating National Register significance. The following list, however, provides basic guidelines that should assist the archaeologist in retrieving adequate information:
- a. General:
 - i. Since it is practically impossible to adequately identify and assess the significance of submerged cultural resources based solely on the generated remote-sensing data, some form of diving will probably be required during Phase II investigations. Because diver safety is a prime concern, MDAH-SHPO requires that the principal investigator submit an Underwater Dive Safety Plan to the governing/contracting agency for approval prior to any diving activity (For additional information on operating in a safe manner, the principal investigator should become familiar with the 1996 “U.S. Army Corps of Engineers Safety and Health Requirements Manual”). This Plan should address: accident management, hazardous activities analyses, operating procedures, and equipment selection and use. Diver standards should meet or exceed the minimum required by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. In addition, the principal investigator/contracting firm will ensure that: divers are medically fit to dive; experienced at diving depths; experienced at tasks to be performed; and experienced with the equipment to be used. All divers, including standby divers, should be qualified divers, as well as

knowledgeable in archaeological methodology for submerged cultural resources. A record of all dives should be kept by a timekeeper.

- ii. Written records should be maintained throughout the course of the study. Test units and other identification techniques, as well as identified anomalies should be photographically recorded, if possible.
- iii. All field investigations must use a permanent reference grid.
- iv. Field methods should employ terrestrial and underwater archaeological methods, as applicable. These methods include, but are not be limited to, remote-sensing surveying, probing, hydroprobing, underwater diving, surface excavation, systematic structural recordation, and the stabilization and conservation of recovered artifacts.
- v. All instrument data should be recorded in concert with a Differential Global Positioning System (GPS).
- vi. Provide location of Phase II testing on 7.5' USGS topographic map.

b. Testing:

- i. Work conducted during the Phase I submerged cultural resources survey should have identified the archaeological property's boundaries and artifact concentrations. However, due to uncontrollable forces (e.g., current, fishing activities) some targets may move, and therefore the re-establishment of the target's location via remote-sensing technologies is suggested.
- ii. Physical examination of the target by a diver may be required in certain situations. If the target is buried, examination of the target with a stainless steel probe or a hydraulic probe can provide insights on target dimensions, configuration, depth, condition, etc.
- iii. If deemed necessary, excavations should only be to the extent that provides adequate data to make the necessary assessment of the submerged cultural resource. Because underwater investigations can be costly and time-consuming, sampling strategies should be employed, thereby limiting work to the minimum necessary to make the required assessments and determinations. However, each site is different and the archaeological methodology used, the

areas of the property tested, and the percentage of the site sampled should be decided on an individual site basis.

- iv. Equipment (e.g., air lift, water jet, hydraulic venturi dredge) needs should be tailored to the specific project with justifications for the selection and utilization of this equipment outlined in the report.
- v. Priority should be given to accurately mapping the distribution of submerged resources (e.g., artifact concentrations, vessel features).
- vi. Information on site conditions, precise limits, chronological placement, structural integrity, dimensional data, and watercraft type and identity, if possible, should be obtained.
- vii. Data recovery techniques should adhere to professional standards. A primary goal is a physical examination and documentation of vessel construction. It is recommended that at least three cross sections of each hull be completely inspected and documented for the purpose of analyzing construction techniques and materials.
- viii. Information should be collected regarding historic watercraft known to have traveled the project's area of potential effects and should include, but not be limited to, newspaper accounts, handbills, and enrollment certificates. Typical schematic drawings of watercraft construction plans that are similar to types located in the project area should be included in the report.
- ix. A datum must be established at each site and measurements should be controlled and referenced by this point. Probing will be useful in locating hull remains and machinery. Probing by hand or with a water jet will determine the amount of sediment overburden and will aid in optimum placement of excavation units (or trenches).
- x. Each excavation unit should be cleared until evidence of hull remains or machinery is encountered. The units should be placed in such a manner as to ensure maximum retrieval of data. The inferred locations of the bow and stern should be examined, if possible, to determine the orientation of the vessel/s. The proper location of these test units should reveal construction details about the ship's hull, deck, and machinery.
- xi. A detailed and accurate map of the exposed portions of each hull should be made to determine exact horizontal site limits, detect artifact densities, and assess the relationship between areas. Plan drawings or sketches should be made from test excavations to

illustrate the location of artifacts, structural members, machinery, and hull layouts.

- xii. If a vessel type was built for a specific use, its relationship to a specific historical context should be assessed. Documentation of former enrollment records and registries should be researched. The integrity of each vessel needs to be thoroughly documented, discussing original form, materials, workmanship, and changes.
- xiii. A detailed and accurate map of the extant portions of each hull should be made to determine exact horizontal site limits, detect artifact densities, and assess the relationship between areas. Plan and profile drawings should be made from test excavations to illustrate the location of artifacts, structural members, machinery, and hull layouts. Historic plans, drawings, and photographs should be reproduced or prepared to visually represent each vessel. Views of deck plans, inboard/outboard profiles, and hull and longitudinal sections should be included. These drawings of existing portions and representative samples of each vessel should be drawn to show methods of construction and individual features. See the National Park Service's *Guidelines for Recording Historic Ships* (1988) for additional information.

F. Phase III:

1. Mitigation of Submerged Cultural Resource: The mitigation of impacts or effects on a significant (i.e., National Register eligible) property can take several forms. For example, relocating, changing, or modifying the proposed project is one way to avoid impacting an eligible archaeological site. Although the site may not be preserved in the long run, this action can eliminate imminent impacts and adverse effects associated with the original project. This step incorporates the property into the project in a non-destructive manner.

However, when avoidance of a significant property is impractical and partial or total destruction is unavoidable, an agreement to conduct data recovery (i.e., complete site excavation) is usually reached (see Section 110b of NHPA). This plan is usually a continuation and expansion of Phase II activities. The data recovery plan should be detailed, discussing and justifying the design of the investigation which will retrieve the data, what research questions will be addressed, the proposed analysis and the expected results, and a justification for the expenditure of public money on the data recovery project should be clearly stated. If the recovery plan is unusually complex, then a Memorandum of Agreement (MOA) between participating agencies should be used. Mitigation recovery projects may not proceed without consultation with MDAH-SHPO and the development of the appropriate written agreement. Whatever is decided, this plan should be consistent with the principles set forth in "Consulting About Archeology Under Section 106," the "Secretary of the Interior's Standards and

Guidelines for Historic Preservation Projects,” and the “Participants Desk Reference” issued by the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation in 1995.

2. Report Guidelines:

- a. All final cultural resources survey (Phase I), testing (Phase II), and mitigation (Phase III) reports should be in narrative form, including a clear and concise presentation of project purposes, methods, results, and recommendations. Phase I cultural resources surveys should discuss positive and negative findings. Phase II archaeological testing reports should address three aspects:
 - i. a description of the study and results of fieldwork and laboratory analyses,
 - ii. an assessment of the presence and nature of the encountered archaeological deposits, and
 - iii. an evaluation of the National Register of Historic Places eligibility of each site in conjunction with recommendations for further work. In addition to these three aspects, Phase III archaeological mitigation reports should also
 - iv. answer in detail all research questions outlined in the data recovery plan and the MOA, if applicable.

Facsimiles of reports will not be accepted by MDAH-SHPO. In addition, all reports submitted to MDAH-SHPO are subject to peer review prior to approval and clearance. Furthermore, all final reports submitted to MDAH-SHPO for review should adhere to the guidelines listed below or be subject to hold and/or rejection. Whenever it is impossible to follow any guideline, an explanation should be provided in the report.

3. Phase I – Cultural Resources Survey:

- a. Reports must be in narrative form and fully address the questions proposed in the research design.
- b. Reports must be submitted on acid free paper.
- c. Reports must provide survey commencement and termination dates, as well as specify actual number of days in the field.
- d. Reports must provide number of personnel that participated in field work and lab analysis.

- e. Reports must provide descriptions of field conditions, such as visibility, for both underwater and terrestrial archaeological investigations.
- f. Reports must provide total number of hectares (acres) surveyed.
- g. Reports must provide discussion of field methods and results explicitly addressing negative as well as positive findings.
- h. Reports must include clear copies of relevant sections of 7.5' USGS topographic quadrangle maps with the precise locations and boundaries of areas surveyed and sites discovered prior to and during the course of the survey indicated thereon. This map must be clearly labeled with the quadrangle name. Any possible pre-World War II standing structures located in the project area during the survey must be reported and their locations indicated on the appropriate 7.5' USGS topographic quadrangles. A completed Historic Resources Inventory (e.g., standing structure, monument, bridge) form, including photograph, for each such resource must be submitted as part of the report. Forms can be obtained by writing the:

Architectural History Section
 Mississippi Department of Archives and History
 P.O. Box 571
 Jackson, Mississippi, 39205-0571
 or phoning 601-359-6940.

- i. Use assigned state site number/s (trinomials) when referring to archaeological sites in the report. A completed or updated state archaeological site form for each site must be submitted as part of the report. Archaeological site cards can be obtained by writing the:

Archaeology Section
 Mississippi Department of Archives and History
 P.O. Box 571
 Jackson, MS 39205-0571
 or phoning 601-359-6940.

Site forms may be submitted to SHPO prior to report preparation for number assignation.

- j. Descriptions of archaeological sites must include sufficient information on location, setting, extent (length, width, depth, etc.), regional chronological positions and cultural affiliations (when possible), intact deposits encountered, degree and types of disturbances observed, to evaluate whether additional investigation is warranted to determine their National Register eligibility. A statement should be made on how further

investigations of the site could lead to a better understanding of the area's past.

- k. All newly located and previously recorded sites investigated/revisited during the survey, that are recommended for additional investigations should be illustrated in the report by means of a sketch map/plan with northing arrow and scale, showing topographic features and any identifiable permanent landmarks, as well as the spatial relationship to the project. The spacing of transects and shovel tests (both positive and negative) should also be noted on these maps.
- l. Reports pertaining to underwater research must also include: a post-plot map illustrating the actual track of the survey vessel; position and contour map of all magnetic targets of interest; examples of pertinent side-scan sonar and bathymetric/fathometer records; and a table providing information on the location and characteristics of each target of interest with recommended treatments.
- m. Classify artifactual remains using existing regional typologies as applicable. In addition, the report must include a tabulation of all artifacts and archaeobotanical and zooarchaeological remains collected from the site.
- n. Illustrate recovered diagnostic artifacts or an appropriate sample.
- o. Archaeologists should express opinions as to the nature of each site—village, quarry, hunting camp, extinct town, etc.—and how this opinion was formed. If such a determination cannot be made, an explanation for the lack of determination should be included in the report.
- p. Archaeologists must evaluate the effects of the project on each site identified.
- q. Archaeologists should suggest alternatives or steps to avoid or mitigate effects to any potentially eligible or eligible National Register site/s that will be affected by the project.
- r. The report must be signed and should include the addresses (postal and email, if applicable) and telephone numbers of the principal investigator and field director/s.

4. Phase II – Archaeological Testing:

- a. Reports should be in narrative form and fully address the questions proposed in the research design.

- b. Reports must be submitted on acid free paper.
- c. Reports must provide testing commencement and termination dates, as well as specify actual number of days in the field.
- d. Reports must provide number of personnel that participated in the field work and lab analysis.
- e. Reports must provide the percentage of the archaeological property tested, as well as a justification for the sampling strategy.
- f. Reports must provide discussion of field methods and results explicitly addressing negative as well as positive findings.
- g. In addition to including 7.5' USGS topographic maps showing location of testing, reports must also include a large scale topographic map of the site with all controlled surface collection, shovel test, excavation unit, backhoe trench, and other investigative method locations portrayed in relation to permanent datum. A variety of other maps may also be required if conducting underwater research (e.g., magnetic).
- h. Reports must include plan and profile illustrations for all test excavation units and features encountered.
- i. Use assigned state site number/s (trinomials) when referring to archaeological sites in the report.
- j. Classify artifactual remains using existing regional typologies as applicable. In addition, the report must include a tabulation (counts and weights, as applicable) of all artifacts and archaeobotanical and zooarchaeological remains collected from the site.
- k. Archaeologists should provide detailed information about the nature of the components represented at site—village, quarry, hunting camp, extinct town, etc.—state how this opinion was formed, and provide regional cultural designations and chronological positions for encountered deposits and the site as a whole.
- l. Archaeologists must provide a determination concerning the significance of the site (i.e., is it eligible for the National Register) and whether the site merits preservation. Provide rationale and justification for this determination, as well as explain how the site meets the National Register criteria (e.g. Bulletin 20: *Nominating Historic Vessels and Shipwrecks to the National Register of Historic Places*).

- m. Archaeologists must evaluate the effect of the project on each site tested.
- n. Archaeologists should justify all suggested mitigation measures. If data recovery investigations are recommended, a research design should be provided detailing specific research questions to be addressed, along with citations of relevant literature supporting the importance of these questions to the current body of anthropological knowledge. However, if the site/s under consideration are determined ineligible, reasons supporting this conclusion should also be included.
- o. The report must be signed and should include the addresses (postal and email, if applicable) and telephone numbers of the principal investigator and field director/s.

5. Phase III – Mitigation:

- a. Reports must present in detail the investigative methods employed.
- b. Reports must be in narrative form and fully address the questions proposed in the research design.
- c. Reports must be written on acid free paper
- d. Reports must provide mitigation commencement and termination dates, as well as actual days spent in the field.
- e. Reports must provide the number of personnel that participated in the field work and lab analysis.
- f. Reports must provide the percentage of the archaeological property mitigated, as well as a justification for this percentage (e.g., Was only a section of the site adversely affected?).
- g. Reports must provide discussion of field methods and results explicitly addressing negative as well as positive findings.
- h. In addition to including 7.5' USGS topographic maps showing location of mitigation, reports must include a large scale topographic (or magnetic, for example, if research pertains to submerged resources) map of the site with all excavation/sampling units portrayed.
- i. Use the assigned state site number/s (trinomial) when referring to archaeological sites in the report.

- j. Classify artifactual remains using existing regional typologies as applicable. In addition, the report must include a tabulation (counts and weights, as applicable) of all artifacts and archaeobotanical and zooarchaeological remains collected from the site.

- k. Archaeologists should provide detailed information about the nature of the site—village, quarry, hunting camp, extinct town, logging schooner, etc.,—state how this opinion was formed and provide regional cultural designations and chronological positions for encountered deposits and the site as a whole.

- l. Archaeologists should provide the rationale for the mitigation project. All research questions should be answered in specific detail, along with citations of relevant literature supporting the importance of these questions and their results to the current body of anthropological knowledge.

- m. The report must be signed and should include the addresses (postal and email, if applicable) and telephone numbers of the principal investigator and field director/s.

G. Example Report Outline for Phase I, II, and III Investigations:

1. **Title Page** (e.g., title; author/s; organization, agency and/or client; contract number; date of report completion)

2. **Management Summary**

3. **Table of Contents**

4. **Introduction** (e.g., project purpose and goals, such as a summary of the scope of work, including applicable regulations or permits as known; project administration and contracting agency; general description, including location, number of person days in the field, and project conditions or constraints).

5. **Background Research** (e.g., environmental setting; summary of paleoenvironment and present climate and vegetation conditions; past and present land uses and current conditions; overview of prehistoric and historic (including navigation history, if applicable) cultural history, of the local project area, including project specific site; review of known sites, previous investigations and research in the project area and vicinity, and information provided by local collectors; primary documentary research for the project area, including historic maps, deeds, or other pertinent information). This section should provide the context for research questions, survey methods, site evaluations and further recommendations.

6. **Research Design** (e.g., research objectives and theoretical context, using the historic contexts outlined in the State's Historic Contexts Document and other relevant references; specific research problems or questions; methods to be employed to address these research objectives and questions; a discussion of the expected results, including hypotheses to be tested as part of the current investigation).
7. **Methods** (e.g., description of field and laboratory methods employed, including rationale, discussion of biases, problems or obstacles encountered, as applicable; an estimated percentage of total project area investigated, with discussion of sampling design and rationale; discussion of changes made during fieldwork from the stated methods and the rationale for these changes).
8. **Field Results** (e.g., clear description of all areas investigated, including those where resources were not recovered or observed; discussion of soils and stratigraphy, including areas and types of disturbance, if applicable; site topography and stratigraphy, size, noted structures or features, and artifact types and density; maps, figures, and original photographs of test locations, features, and soil profiles, as needed; original photographs of individual standing building and photographs of streetscapes, if applicable).
9. **Artifact Analysis** (e.g., detailed descriptions and results of analyses used; original photographs or drawings of selected or representative artifacts, including scale; a complete inventory of artifacts by provenience and class should be included; tables or other summary information; identification of the final artifact collection and project notes repository).
10. **Interpretations/Conclusions** (e.g., discussion of the results in terms of the background cultural context, research design and goals, and stated research problems; discussion of constraints and reliability of methods; discussion of future potential research problems based on results and conclusions; and assessment on whether further work should be conducted at the site).
11. **Recommendations** (e.g., a statement on whether the site is eligible for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places?).

Source: *Miss. Code* §§ 39-7-1, 25-59-1 (1972, as amended).

Conclusions: This document provides basic guidelines for conducting and reporting Phase I, II, and III archaeological investigations in Mississippi. However, it is important to remember that this document will be subject to modification as times goes by. As cultural resource management laws and regulations, archaeological theory and techniques, as well as the public's attitude toward cultural resources change, the document itself will evolve to reflect these changes. For now, however, it is hoped these guidelines will assist archaeologists and agency administrators in developing research designs capable of retrieving sufficient amounts of data

that will address the identification and evaluation of cultural resources and the development and implementation of appropriate mitigation proposals.

Acknowledgements: Although this document relies heavily upon currently available archaeological methodologies, literature, and legislation, it could not have been completed without the participation of the state's professional community. Many provided comments, suggestions, and support during the drafting of these guidelines to which I am very grateful. In particular, I would like to thank MDAH-SHPO staff archaeologists Sam McGahey, Keith Baca, and John Connaway, as well as review and compliance officer Roger Walker for reviewing and commenting on numerous drafts. Special thanks go to Tad Britt, Steve James, and Charles Pearson for providing invaluable information and insights on the world of underwater archaeology. Others providing critical commentary include Phil Carr, John O'Hear, Melissa Reams, and David Fant, all part of a special Mississippi Association of Professional Archaeologists sub-committee, as well as Elizabeth Boggess, Joseph Giliberti, Cliff Jenkins, David Kelley, Robert Lafferty, James Lauro, Baxter Mann, Evan Peacock, Janet Rafferty, Nancy Ross-Stallings, Richard Stallings and Mary Evelyn Starr. Without participation from these professionals: academicians, governmental officials, and contractors alike, development and compilation of these guidelines could not have been possible.

References.

Advisory Council on Historic Preservation

1980 *Treatment of Archeological Properties: A Handbook*. Advisory Council on Historic Preservation, Washington, D.C.

1986 *Working with Section 106: Section 106, Step-by-Step*. Advisory Council on Historic Preservation, Washington, D.C.

1989 *Working with Section 106: Preparing Agreement Documents*. Advisory Council on Historic Preservation, Washington, D.C.

Alabama Historical Commission

1996 Alabama Historical Commission Policy for Archaeological Survey and Testing in Alabama. Manuscript on file at the Alabama Historical Commission, Alabama State Historic Preservation Office, Montgomery.

Anderson, Richard K.

1988 *Guidelines for Recording Historic Ships*. National Park Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, Washington, D.C.

Ashmore, Wendy and Robert J. Sharer

1988 *Discovering Our Past: A Brief Introduction to Archaeology*. Mayfield Publishing Company, Mountain View, California.

Bense, Judith A., Hester A. Davis, Lorraine Heartfield, and Kathleen Deagan

1986 Standards and Guidelines for Quality Control in Archaeological Resource Management in the Southeastern United States. *Southeastern Archaeology* 5(1):56-62.

Bruce, Kevin, Philip Carr, Cliff Jenkins, and Bruce Gray

1998 Request for Proposals: Phase II Testing of Archaeological Sites 22Lw616, 22Lw617, 22Lw618, 22Lw619, 22Lw620, 22Lw621, and 22Lw622, in Conjunction with the Proposed Widening and Realignment of U.S. Highway 84 from the East end of the Monticello Bypass to the Lincoln/Lawrence County line, in Lawrence County, Mississippi (MDOT Project No. 97-0015-01-077-10). Manuscript on file at the Mississippi Department of Transportation, Archaeology Section, Jackson.

Carr, Philip, Cliff Jenkins, Kevin Bruce, and Bruce Gray

1998 Request for Proposals: Phase III Mitigation of Archaeological Site 22Ok973, in Conjunction with the Proposed Four-Laning of Mississippi Highway 25, Oktibbeha County, Mississippi. Manuscript on file at the Mississippi Department of Transportation, Archaeology Section, Jackson.

Davis, Hester A., editor.

1982 *A State Plan for the Conservation of Archeological Resources in Arkansas*. Arkansas Archeological Survey Research Series 21.

Georgia State Historic Preservation Office

1993 Archaeological Assessment Report Guidelines and Components. Manuscript on file at the Department of Natural Resources, Historic Preservation Division, State Historic Preservation Office, Atlanta.

Harper, Herbert L. and Nick Fielder

1995 Tennessee SHPO Standards and Guidelines for Archaeological Resource Management Studies. Manuscript on file at the Tennessee Historical Commission, Nashville.

Jackson, H. Edwin

n.d. University of Southern Mississippi's 1991 Archaeology Field School: Field and Laboratory Procedures. Manuscript on file at The University of Southern Mississippi, Hattiesburg.

Kentucky State Historic Preservation Office

1990 Specifications for Archaeological Fieldwork and Assessment Reports. Manuscript on file at the Kentucky State Historic Preservation Office, Kentucky Heritage Council, Frankfurt.
King, Thomas F.

1978 *The Archeological Survey: Methods and Uses*. Heritage Conservation and Recreation Service, U.S. Department of the Interior, Washington D.C.

1998 *Cultural Resource Laws & Practice, an Introductory Guide*. AltaMira Press, Walnut Creek, California.

McGahey, Samuel O.

n.d. State of Mississippi Guidelines for Cultural Resource Survey Reports. Revised 1988, 1989, 1990, 1993, 1994, 1995, 1996, and 1998. Manuscript on file at the Mississippi Department of Archives and History, Jackson.

Moore, James M.

1996 Request for Proposals: Phase I Archaeological Survey. Proposed Improvements to Walker Springs Road/Gallaher View Road, from North of Interstate 40 to State Route 169 in Knoxville, Knox County, Tennessee. Manuscript on file at the Tennessee Department of Transportation, Nashville.

1996 Request for Proposals: Phase II Testing of Archaeological Sites 40S1185, 40S1187, and 40S1192, Sullivan County. In Conjunction with the Proposed Improvements Proposed State Route 93 (South Wilcox Drive) from South of SR-347 to South Gaylemont Drive in Sullivan Gardens, Sullivan County, Tennessee. Manuscript on file at the Tennessee Department of Transportation, Nashville.

New Jersey State Historic Preservation Office

1990 Guidelines for the Preparation of Cultural Resources Management Archaeological Reports Submitted to the Office of New Jersey Heritage. Manuscript on file at the Department of Environmental Protection, Division of Parks and Forestry, Office of New Jersey Heritage, Trenton.

North Carolina State Historic Preservation Office

1982 Guidelines for the Preparation of Reports of Archeological Surveys and Evaluations. Manuscript on file at the North Carolina Archeology and Historic Preservation Section, Division of Archives and History, Department of Cultural Resources, Raleigh.

Pennsylvania Historical and Museum Commission

1991 Cultural Resource Management in Pennsylvania: Guidelines for Archaeological Investigations. Manuscript on file at the Bureau for Historic Preservation, Pennsylvania Historical and Museum Commission, Harrisburg.

Prentice, Guy

1991 Field Procedures Manual for the Big South Fork River and Recreation Area Archaeological Resource Survey Project 1991 Field Season. Manuscript on file at the Southeast Archaeological Center, National Park Service, Tallahassee, Florida.

Schiffer, Michael B. and George J. Gumerman

1977 *Conservation Archaeology: A Guide for Cultural Resource Management Studies*. Academic Press, Inc., New York.

South Carolina State Historic Preservation Office

n.d. Guidelines and Standards for Archaeological Investigations. Manuscript on file at the State Historic Preservation Office, Review and Compliance Branch, South Carolina Department of Archives and History, Columbia.

Tennessee Division of Archaeology

1997 Standards and Guidelines for Archaeological Permit Application. Manuscript on file at the Tennessee Department of Environment and Conservation, Division of Archaeology, Nashville.

Texas Historical Commission

1995 A Guide to Archeological Survey Standards for Texas: Draft for CTA Review. Document Prepared by the Department of Antiquities Protection, Texas Historical Commission, Austin.

Thomas, David Hurst

1989 *Archaeology*. 2nd Edition. Holt, Rinehart and Winston, Inc., Fort Worth, Texas.

United States Army Corps of Engineers.

1998 Scope of Work for Limited Survey and National Register of Historic Places Eligibility Evaluations of all Bridges, Structures and Targets 4-6, 4-7, 4-11, 4-12, 4-15, and 4-16 Located within Item 4 of the Upper Yazoo Projects, LeFlore County, Mississippi. Vicksburg District.

United States Congress, Office of Technology Assessment

1987 *Technologies for Underwater Archaeology and Maritime Preservation—Background Paper, OTA-BP-E-37*. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington D.C.

Mississippi Historic Preservation Grants Guide for Survey, Planning, Pre-Development and Development Activities. REPEALED. Effective 10/16/2009.

Mississippi Historic Preservation Professional Review Board Bylaws. REPEALED. Effective 10/16/2009.

Guidelines for Archaeological Investigations and Reports in Mississippi. REPEALED. Effective 10/16/2009.

Procedure for amending grant projects scopes of work, provided amendments don't affect allocated funds amounts. REPEALED. Effective 10/16/2009.

Guidelines for Section 106 Reviews of Cellular Tower Sites. REPEALED. Effective 10/16/2009.

Policy prohibiting staff archaeologists from conducting private surveys. REPEALED. Effective 10/16/2009.

Certified Local Government Guidelines and Regulations Amendment: include churches as potential applicants. REPEALED. Effective 10/16/2009.

Certified Local Government Program Regulations. REPEALED. Effective 10/16/2009.

Mississippi Historic Preservation Professional Review Board Guidelines. REPEALED. Effective 10/16/2009.

Policy on the Preparation of National Register nominations by Department staff members on a consultant basis. REPEALED. Effective 10/16/2009.

Reinstatement of the state historical marker program, including steps to improve the program's efficiency. REPEALED. Effective 10/16/2009.

Part 3 Chapter 12: Mississippi Standards and Guidelines for Archaeological Investigations

Rule 12.1. Introduction to the Standards

Mississippi history dates back to over 12,000 years ago. The vast majority of that history is unwritten and becomes known only through the archaeological record. Most often, archaeological investigations in Mississippi occur in response to federal and state laws that protect archaeological resources. The Mississippi Department of Archives and History, serving as the Mississippi State Historic Preservation Office (MSSHPO), developed these Standards to provide a framework for those activities, as well as guidance for non-regulatory archaeological studies. In accordance with MS Code § 39-7-21 (2013), the Board of Trustees adopted the following standards to guide archaeological excavations in Mississippi. These Standards replace the "*Guidelines for Archaeological Investigations and Reports in Mississippi*" established in 2001, and as amended in 2012. Since that date, there have been many technological advances, advances in archaeological method and theory, and reevaluation of archaeological practices and procedures in Mississippi. These Standards will reflect those.

The Standards reflect various goals for Mississippi archaeology:

1. Ensure that archaeological studies meet high professional research standards.
2. Identify important archaeological sites that contribute to our understanding of Mississippi's pre-contact and post-contact history.
3. Protect important archaeological sites, or when appropriate, gain information.
4. Provide significant public benefits.
5. Develop sound and reasoned public policy on regulatory archaeology.
6. Keep archaeological studies as cost effective as possible.
7. Increase creativity and flexibility in the conduct of archaeological studies.

Archaeology in Mississippi must result in significant public benefit. As new information is garnered through archaeological research, it is the archaeological community's responsibility to share this information widely. These Standards emphasize public education and communication with clients, landowners, local governments, community members, and interested constituencies. The Standards also stress the need for clear and improved communication about archaeological expectations, methods, findings, and their value and relevance. These Standards are meant to allow for flexibility to ensure that the scope and cost of recommended archaeological actions are

commensurate with a project's scale, level of anticipated impacts, project area characteristics, and the significance of sites that may be affected by the project.

The Standards emphasize the importance of prioritizing archaeological investigations in an effort to focus on the discovery and consideration of significant archaeological sites. The Standards also emphasize the importance of evaluating the significance of a site as early as possible in the archaeological assessment process.

These Standards represent a summary of information that has been drawn from other published SHPO guidelines and practical experience working in the Southeastern United States. The Standards have been designed to reflect the minimum specifications for the collection and presentation of technical archaeological information.

NOTE: Survey or data recovery methods that do not meet the minimum standards described herein may result in additional project costs and delays.

MSSHPO will use these Standards when reviewing Cultural Resource Management (CRM) reports, and omissions from the procedures recommended herein may be grounds for rejecting reports, or requiring further field, laboratory, or background work.

The MSSHPO is involved in two major categories of project reviews:

- a. **Reviews in accordance with federal laws**, primarily under Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act, referred to as "Section 106," and sometimes under Section 110 of the Act. Under Section 106, federally funded, licensed, permitted, and assisted projects are subject to review. These regulations are codified in 36CFR800.
- b. **Reviews under state laws**, primarily the "Antiquities Law," under Mississippi Code 39.

The MSSHPO offers advice/guidance on projects not falling into the categories of Section 106 projects or projects involving state, county or town-owned lands. Such projects include:

- a. **Projects that are not federal undertakings as codified in 36 CFR 800 but could have Section 106 ties in the future.**
- b. **Projects involving historic cemeteries. With these types of projects, it is the responsibility of the county coroner to regulate; the MSSHPO will only offer advice and has no jurisdiction over cemeteries.**

These Standards will be reviewed and revised, if necessary, every four (4) years by the Mississippi Department of Archives and History and a Mississippi Association of Professional Archaeologists (MAPA) four (4) member committee consisting of one archaeologist from each

of the following areas: academia (university/college professor); cultural resource management firm (Principal Investigator); Mississippi Department of Transportation (MDOT); and a federal agency (such as the Corps of Engineers).

Rule 12.1.1. Environmental Review and Section 106 Consultation Process FAQ

Environmental Review

The MSSHPO has a role in advising federal and state agencies about historic properties in conjunction with activities that are subject to environmental review. MSSHPO internal procedures are intended to follow federal and state laws, regulations, and processes regarding historic properties. There are differences between federal law and regulations regarding historic properties and state laws and processes regarding cultural resources.

What is the Section 106 process?

Federal laws and regulations, starting with the National Historic Preservation Act (NHPA) of 1966, are what drive modern cultural resource practices. Section 106 of the NHPA requires Federal agencies take their effects on historic properties (including archeological sites) into account when planning projects. Other laws and regulations have been passed since, producing a detailed set of procedures that have come to be known as the “Section 106 Process.” A summary of Section 106 regulations and how to use them may be found on the web site of the [Advisory Council on Historic Preservation](#) (ACHP).

What is the Section 106 bottom line?

The bottom line is: all federally funded, licensed, or permitted projects must be reviewed for impacts to cultural resources. To initiate a Section 106 review, please use the [Request For Cultural Resource Assessment](#) form and [associated guidance](#) unless you have previously executed agreement documents for project review with this office. If you have questions about the form or your project, contact the Review and Compliance Officer at (601)576-6940.

What sorts of projects are federally funded?

Federally funded projects include levees and Clean Water Act (404) permits developed by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers and highways funded by the Federal Highway Administration through the Mississippi Department of Transportation (MDOT). Federal funding can also include less obvious projects such as those developed with money provided by the U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) through Community Development Block Grants (CDBG). These grants are administered through the Mississippi Development Authority (MDA), but since the source of funding is federal, Section 106 regulations apply. Communities often find that projects such as wastewater treatment improvements fall under Section 106.

How about federally permitted projects?

The most commonly encountered permits are those issued by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers (COE), the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), the Federal Energy Regulatory

Commission (FERC) and the Federal Communications Commission (FCC). COE permits generally involve projects such as bridges, pipeline crossings over streams, and projects that involve changes to stream channels or flood plains. FERC permits are required for natural gas pipelines and related facilities, while FCC permits are issued for cell towers. Housing and Urban Development (HUD), Rural Development Agency (RDA), and Federal Deposit Insurance Commission (FDIC) often issue loans and permits for housing rehabilitation.

Who reviews the projects?

Each state has a State Historic Preservation Office and a staff of archaeologists, architectural historians, and technical preservation specialists. The Mississippi State Historic Preservation Officer (MSSHPO) is the Director of the Mississippi Department of Archives and History (MDAH). A list of staff involved in cultural resource assessments may be found at the MDAH website at www.mdah.ms.gov.

When should I contact the Mississippi State Historic Preservation Office?

The MSSHPO should be contacted as early as possible in the project development process. MSSHPO staff can offer guidance and help to avoid known archeological sites or areas likely to contain sites. Also, contacting us early will allow us to determine if the building you are working on is listed or eligible for listing for the National Register of Historic Places.

How do I submit a project for review?

The MSSHPO will accept project submissions by mail. Projects should be submitted to:

Mailing Address:

MDAH Historic Preservation
Review and Compliance Officer
P. O. Box 571
Jackson Mississippi 39205

Shipping Address:

MDAH Historic Preservation
Review and Compliance Officer
100 South State Street
Jackson, MS 39201

How long does a review take?

By law, the MSSHPO is allowed 30 days for review. Most reviews are completed in one to three weeks. Projects are date stamped and reviewed in the order that they arrive. If the information provided to MSSHPO is incomplete, or if additional information is required to complete our review, the review period may be extended an additional 30 days, once the additional information is received.

What is the outcome of a structural review?

After reviewing the photos and scope of work the MSSHPO will determine the following:

1. The National Register eligibility of the building or structure
2. If found to be eligible, the effect of the project on the building or structure. If the structure is found to be ineligible for the National Register, the project may proceed without further review. If the structure is found to be eligible, any work performed on the

structure must meet the Secretary of the Interior's [Standards for the Treatment of Historic Properties](#).

What is the outcome of an archeological review?

The MSSHPO Archeologist performs a cultural resources assessment, examining archeological site files, maps, and other background information for the project area. If in the reviewer's judgment, the proposed project area is very unlikely to contain archeological sites, a clearance letter is sent and the process is complete. If, on the other hand, the area has good potential for containing sites or if recorded sites are present, a letter requesting an archeological survey is sent.

Who pays for the survey?

In the case of federally funded projects, the responsible federal agency pays for the survey and for any additional investigations that ultimately might be necessary. Cultural resource costs associated with federally permitted projects are the responsibility of the developer/applicant.

What if no sites are found on the survey?

If the consultant finds no evidence of archeological sites, a report describing the survey investigation is submitted for review. If the fieldwork and report are judged by the MSSHPO Archeologist to be adequate, a clearance letter is sent and the process is complete.

What if something is found?

If the consultant finds an archeological site (or sites) within the project area, a recommendation will be made for systematic archeological testing (referred to as a Phase II investigation) to determine if the site is eligible for listing on the National Register of Historic Places (NRHP). Testing generally involves controlled excavation of several test units with the objective of determining if the site is significant. At the conclusion of Phase II testing, two outcomes are possible. If the site is not considered to be significant and the testing procedures and report are judged by the MSSHPO Archeologist to be adequate, a clearance letter is sent and the process is complete. If the site is judged to be significant, then the process moves to mitigation (referred to as a Phase III investigation). At any stage, consideration can be given to altering the proposed project to avoid archeological sites.

Who pays for the testing?

As was the case with Phase I surveys, Phase II federally funded projects are paid for by the responsible federal agency. In the case of federally permitted projects, Phase II testing costs are the responsibility of the developer.

What makes a site significant?

This is the key question, as not all sites are significant. Significance is determined by evaluating whether a site is eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places, by applying a set of criteria and criteria considerations to the site. The four criteria are Criterion A: association with an important historical event; Criterion B: association with an important historical person; Criterion C: historically important design/construction; and Criterion D: potential to yield important historical or archeological information. Not surprisingly, most archeological sites that are found to be significant fall under Criterion D. For further discussion please refer to Section 3.0: Evaluating Site Significance.

What happens if a site is found to be significant?

If a site is determined to be significant, it is said to be an “eligible” property, meaning that it is eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places. If the project cannot be modified to avoid the site, then the damage caused by construction must be mitigated. This is usually accomplished through major data recovery excavations, which are designed to recover the information contained in the site prior to its destruction. Plans for excavation are coordinated through the MSSHPO and the funding/permitting federal agency through development of a Memorandum of Agreement (MOA). Other alternative mitigations are also applicable if they are agreed upon by all parties involved.

Who pays for the data recovery or salvage excavations?

As was the case with Phase I surveys and Phase II testing projects, federally funded projects are paid for by the responsible federal agency. In the case of federally permitted projects, Phase III mitigation/data recovery excavation costs or alternative mitigation costs are the responsibility of the developer/applicant.

Rule 12.1.2. A Brief Overview of the Review Process

1. Individuals and firms developing proposals for archaeological investigations are encouraged to consult with the MSSHPO concerning methods and strategies prior to beginning fieldwork.
2. In addition, individuals and firms **must** submit a scope of work to MSSHPO for comment prior to conducting Phase I cultural resource surveys of 200 hectares (500 acres) or more as well as prior to conducting any Phase II or III investigations. These documents should specify the types of cultural resources known or anticipated to be in the project’s area of potential effects, the field and/or archival techniques proposed, the projected number of field personnel required for the project, and the estimated time in the field.
3. Upon completion of a field project, the draft site cards (for both newly reported and previously reported sites) are submitted to the MSSHPO. The MSSHPO will issue site numbers for all new sites within thirty (30) days. Batches of 20 or more site forms may take longer to receive site numbers. The state site numbers are required for the discussion of all sites within a project area in management summaries, draft reports and final reports.

Written comments on the draft site forms will be provided within thirty (30) days of submission. Visit the Site Forms page for more information.

4. The **draft** report is submitted to the MSSHPO for review. The MSSHPO will provide written comments within 30 days.
5. After addressing comments from the *federal agency, relevant Tribal Historic Preservation Offices (THPO), and the MSSHPO*, the **final** report is submitted. The MSSHPO does not accept a report as final until all new and updated site forms have been accepted as final. The report is considered final when a letter accepting the report is issued to the federal agency and contractor. A comment letter will be issued upon receipt of the final report.
6. The project is not considered final until the collection is curated at an appropriate facility. MDAH requires submission of a curation statement/documentation (appendix or otherwise) confirming use of a facility that meets federal standards (36 CFR 79 <https://www.nps.gov/archeology/tools/36CFR79.HTM>). MDAH furthermore **strongly** encourages curating collections in Mississippi facilities that meet federal standards.

Rule 12.1.3. Relevant Statutory Authorities

There are a number of state and federal laws that require identification, consideration, and possible protection of archaeological sites. Archaeological studies in Mississippi will generally result from compliance with one or more of the following laws, regulations, and rules. Other federal and state laws and regulations may occasionally be involved in an undertaking requiring an archaeological investigation.

1. National Historic Preservation Act of 1966, as amended (NHPA 1992)
2. 36 CFR 800 (Advisory Council of Historic Preservation’s regulations implementing Section 106 and Section 110 of NHPA)
3. National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA 1969)
4. Native American Graves and Repatriation Act (NAGPRA 1992)
5. Executive Order 11593, Protection and Enhancement of the Cultural Environment
6. Department of the Interior regulations 36 CFR 60, 36 CFR 63, 36 CFR 66, and 36 CFR 79
7. Mississippi Antiquities Act (Mississippi Code of 1972, 39-7-3 et seq.)

For further guidance, please refer to the Advisory Council’s webpage at: www.achp.gov

Source: MS Code § 39-7-21 (2013)

Rule 12.2. Area of Potential Effects (APE)

THE MSSHPO uses the federal definition of “Area of Potential Effects” (APE) to describe the maximum area that may be affected by a project. Both direct and indirect effects to archaeological sites must be considered when determining the APE.

A few examples of project related impacts in an APE beyond the actual construction limits of the project include:

1. Borrow areas and other sources of fill material.
2. Disposal sites or waste areas.
3. New or upgraded access or haul roads.
4. Staging, storage, and stockpile areas.
5. Drainage diversions.
6. Viewshed.

The Federal definition of the APE: “The geographic area or areas within which an undertaking may directly or indirectly cause changes in the character or use of historic properties, if any such properties exist. The area of potential effects is influenced by the scale and nature of an undertaking and may be different for different kinds of effects caused by the undertaking.” [36 CFR 800.16 (d)]. In defining the APE, the MSSHPO will consider potential direct, indirect, and cumulative effects to historic properties and all aspects of integrity, including their associated settings as applicable.

Rule 12.2.1. Determining the Area of Potential Effect: FCC Projects

Direct Effects

The APE for direct effects is the area of ground disturbance for the tower, including any proposed access roads, or other construction activity that will result from the undertaking.

Visual (Indirect) Effects

Standard APEs for visual effects have been suggested in the National Programmatic Agreement (NPA) and will guide reviews by the MSSHPO. However, topography and other environmental factors may warrant the development of an alternate APE. The NPA affords the SHPO the right to recommend an alternate APE for any projects. Unless an alternate APE is developed in consultation with the SHPO, the following APEs should be used for assessing visual effects:

<i>Tower Height</i>	<i>APE Radius</i>
≤ 200 feet	½ mile
201-400 feet	¾ mile
> 400 feet	1 ½ miles

Rule 12.2.2. Assessing Effects: non- FCC Projects

Direct Effects

The applicant shall assess the direct effect of the undertaking on historic properties, both architectural and archaeological, using the Criteria of Adverse Effect (36 CFR Part 800.5(a)(1)). Assessment of effect must be made by a qualified professional and submitted to the MSSHPO.

Indirect Effects

If an identified historic property is located within the APE for indirect effects, then a qualified professional is required to assess the effect of the proposed tower. In most cases, the MSSHPO requires that the applicant conduct a balloon test or computer simulation to assess the potential visual effects of the tower installation on historic properties. Documentation must include a statement of effect, explanation of assessment, photographs of the balloon test or photo simulation, and any alternatives considered to avoid, minimize, or mitigate adverse effects. Submit all documentation to the MSSHPO. To cut down on requests for additional information and overall review times, the MSSHPO strongly encourages applicants to assess the effect of the tower on all surveyed properties in the APE, including those that have not been formally evaluated for National register eligibility. If you choose to only evaluate effects on listed and eligible properties, you may receive a request for additional information from the MSSHPO asking you to conduct another balloon test to evaluate the effect on a property that the MSSHPO considers potentially eligible for listing. The NPA affords the SHPO the right to request this information.

Some examples of indirect effects can include projects such as water channel improvements or recreational areas. Work on waterways such as dredging or bank stabilizations can increase erosion in other areas adjacent to project areas and outside of the immediate ROW. Another example of waterway work that can have an indirect effect are levee setbacks. Sites which are located along the protected side of a levee can lose that protection if the levee is moved ("setback") from its original location. This type of construction action can render sites which were formally protected from flooding into sites which will soon erode away due to abandonment. Recreational area projects such as trails, day-use areas, or campgrounds can also have indirect effects by providing access to sites which are not in the immediate ROW.

Rule 12.3. Evaluating Site Significance

National Register Criteria

In order for proper NRHP eligibility determinations to be made, a site must first be placed within the proper context. A site must also be addressed at the national, regional, and local levels for NRHP eligibility. Archaeological sites are most often addressed for their eligibility under Criterion D. However, sites can be eligible under all Criteria of the NRHP. Therefore, when addressing an archaeological site's eligibility to the NRHP, be sure to address Criteria A-D. An important thing to keep in mind is that integrity is a *consideration* and is not Criterion D. In addition to archaeological data and contexts, a community's opinion about a historic site's

significance sometimes warrants consideration in discerning NRHP eligibility. (See NRHP Bulletins for more information).

Archaeological investigations conducted under federal and regulatory requirements seek to identify “significant” archaeological sites. A significant site meets the criteria for inclusion in the National Register of Historic Places or Mississippi Landmark status. Both use the National Register criteria for evaluating significance.

The National Register criteria are:

Criterion A: Sites that are associated with events that have made a significant contribution to the broad patterns of our history.

Criterion B: Sites that are associated with the lives of persons significant in our past.

Criterion C: Sites that embody the distinctive characteristics of a type, period, or method of construction, or that represent work of a master, or that possess high artistic values, or that represent a significant and distinguishable entity whose components may lack individual distinction.

Criterion D: Sites that have yielded, or may be likely to yield, information important in prehistory or history.

In addition to these criteria, the NHPA also contains seven Criteria Considerations (36 CFR 60.4) that may render a property eligible that is ordinarily considered ineligible for the NRHP. They are:

A. A religious property deriving primary significance from architectural or artistic distinction or historical importance; or

B. A building or structure removed from its original location but which is significant primarily for architectural value, or which is the surviving structure most importantly associated with a historic person or event; or

C. A birthplace or grave of a historical figure of outstanding importance if there is no appropriate site or building directly associated with his productive life.

D. A cemetery which derives its primary significance from graves of persons of transcendent importance, from age, from distinctive design features, or from association with historic events; or

E. A reconstructed building when accurately executed in a suitable environment and presented in a dignified manner as part of a restoration master plan, and when no other building or structure with the same association has survived; or

F. A property primarily commemorative in intent if design, age, tradition, or symbolic value has invested it with its own exceptional significance; or

G. A property achieving significance within the past 50 years if it is of exceptional importance.

Source: 36CFR 60

Rule 12.3.1. Evaluation Checklist for Archaeological Properties

SIGNIFICANCE

CRITERION D

___ Define the relevant context and level of significance (local, state, or national). This may be done simultaneously with the next step.

___ Review the archaeological literature (gray and scholarly) pertaining to sites of this type.

___ Identify the important research questions/themes that can be addressed by sites of this type.

___ Demonstrate what this site could potentially add to that body of knowledge (e.g. datasets recovered or potentially available).

For CRITERION A, B, OR C refer to Section 3.2. Evaluating Archaeological Sites under Criteria other than D.

___ Consider all Criteria that may be applicable to the property (Ask, what other values does the property have besides information potential?) and demonstrate the strength of association between that event, person, architectural feature, or other value and the property. A comparative context is useful in these evaluations.

INTEGRITY

CRITERION D

___ If there has been excavation, demonstrate that the quality of the data (e.g. horizontal spatial relationships, stratigraphic relationships, etc.) is sufficient to answer the important research questions identified.

___ It may be helpful to consider the National Register's seven aspects of integrity as they apply to archaeological properties. However, it is not necessary if a discussion of archaeological integrity is provided. Refer to ***Section 3.3. Assessing the National Register Integrity of Archaeological Sites*** or the National Register Bulletin, ***Guidelines for Evaluating and Registering Archeological Properties*** for further guidance.

____ If there has been no excavation, demonstrate that there is a high likelihood that the site retains integrity (e.g. a land-use history demonstrating that the site has not been subjected to impacts that would compromise its integrity), and any additional information with regard to determining archaeological integrity. For example, information such as artifacts collected or mapping from a walkover survey, identification of above ground features such as swales, depressions, foundations, or other ruins, and comparison with historic maps, if possible. Comparison with similar sites or site types may also provide information on potential or expected data sets. Non-invasive methods of survey or inventory can also be helpful, such as Ground Penetrating Radar (GPR), Side Scan Sonar, Soil Resistivity, or other remote sensing techniques.

CRITERION A, B, OR C

____ It is important to consider the National Register's seven aspects of integrity and specifically, how they apply to archaeological properties. Refer to *Section 3.3. Assessing the National Register Integrity of Archaeological Sites*, or the National Register Bulletin, *Guidelines for Evaluating and Registering Archeological Properties* for further guidance.

A NOTE ABOUT INTEGRITY

An evaluation of integrity *always* comes after an evaluation of significance. Integrity is a relative measure and its definition depends upon the historic context and significance of the archaeological property. For Criterion D evaluations, for instance, a property may not have good stratigraphic integrity, but may still be able to answer significant questions. A rare site type, for instance, may have disturbed deposits, but may still be eligible because of the information it contains.

A NOTE ABOUT CONTEXT FOR CRITERION D

The importance of the information, as well as the degree of integrity necessary is oftentimes related to the area of significance of the property, the amount of research in a given area and the level of significance (local, state, or national). For instance, a lithic scatter in some parts of Mississippi may not be significant, while a lithic scatter in other parts of Mississippi may be.

Rule 12.3.2. Evaluating Archaeological Sites under Criteria other than D

As with any other resource, context is crucial for evaluating archaeological sites under any of the Criteria. The context must be based on the Criteria and areas of significance claimed for the property. The fact that a resource is simply associated with a larger trend is not enough to make it significant under Criterion A (e.g. not every school is significant for education, etc.); the

association must be significant. Likewise, under Criterion C, it is not enough for a property to simply exemplify a significant architectural pattern; that pattern must be significant within a particular context and the property must convey that significance. Under Criterion B, a property must be associated with the productive life of the person, or why the person is significant, and the context must demonstrate this association. A comparative context is needed to make these arguments.

Pre-Contact (Prehistoric) Sites

For Pre-Contact archaeological sites (as well as historical archaeological sites and other non-archaeological properties), the National Park Service has been moving in a new direction of late. NPS has been trying to evaluate sites holistically and consider all four Criteria.

Criterion A:

A fully excavated archaeological site would not be eligible under Criterion D because its information potential is gone; however, that site could be eligible under Criterion A if it can be demonstrated that it is associated with important events or trends in the history of archaeological or anthropological theory (see the National Register Bulletin *Guidelines for Evaluating and Registering Archeological Properties*). The resource category would still be site, but in the broader meaning of the term presented in the NR Bulletins. Keep in mind, though, that a site need not be fully excavated to be eligible under Criterion A for association with important trends or events. Type sites could also be eligible for their role in defining a chronology or cultural group. Examples would include Naina Waiya. The context would have to focus on how the site defined the complex or time period and the archaeological materials would still have to have enough integrity to show that connection.

Criterion B:

Archaeological sites could be eligible under Criterion B if they are associated with a significant person. If that person were an archaeologist, for instance, the context would need to examine the sites excavated by the archaeologist and demonstrate why a particular site best represents the archaeologist and his contributions to the field. A good example would be Pecos in New Mexico for its association with A.V. Kidder or Ackia and Jesse Jennings. In general, sites associated with culturally significant pre-Contact persons or deities are evaluated as Traditional Cultural Properties.

Criterion C:

Sites eligible under Criterion C must “embody the distinctive characteristics of a type, period, or method of construction, or represent the work of a master or possess high artistic value or represent a significant and distinguishable entity whose components may lack individual distinction.” The latter often refers to districts. The first portion

of the criterion could refer to a structure or artistic expression associated with a specific cultural period or type (e.g. Late Woodland or Algonquian). The context would need to establish what the distinctive characteristics of the type are or how it possesses high artistic value and why this site is a significant example. For example, mounds could be significant under Criterion C for Architecture because they embody the distinctive characteristics of building traditions during a certain period of prehistory. The remains do not, necessarily have to be visible aboveground; this criterion could refer to a village plan and layout, for instance. In terms of artistic value, petroglyph sites are works of art that can be easily evaluated under Criterion C because they both embody the distinctive cultural traditions of a specific prehistoric period and possess artistic value.

Contact and Historic Sites

For Contact and Historic sites, it may be easier for the layperson conceptually to understand the case for significance under Criteria other than D because they may be more familiar with such resources and, often, may be able to “see” them. Keep in mind, however, that archaeologists often “see” patterns in the archaeological record that can convey significance for events, architectural or artistic features, or persons.

Criteria A and B:

For Criteria A and B, keep in mind that the archaeological record is just another line of historical evidence, **equally as important as** the written record or oral history or historic mapping, and so on; therefore, it can be easily used to support Criterion A or B significance. Documentation and explanation is key to making the case for historical archaeological sites under Criterion A or B. Documentation can take the form of photographs, maps, etc. and the preparer must be able to explain the significance and integrity of the site and make it clear to the layperson. Areas of significance and integrity are also key to evaluating an archaeological site under Criterion A or B. In addition, the site does not need to contain above-ground remains (this will be touched on more in-depth in the next section on integrity). As mentioned previously, as with any property being nominated to the National Register under Criterion A, association with a significant trend or event does not necessarily make a site eligible; the association must be significant as well. Examples would include the archaeological remains of Thomas Edison’s laboratory or Jefferson College and the hanging of Aaron Burr. In addition, Native American sites can be eligible under Criterion B if the person associated with the property is individually significant within a particular context. As with all Criterion B properties (not just archaeological), you must demonstrate the strength of the association between the person and property and consider what other properties exist to convey that aspect of the person’s significance and discuss why this particular property is the best one to do that (a comparative

context). The preparer must evaluate significance first and consider if the property is a rare example or the only property left to convey a certain aspect of a person's productive life. For both precontact and historic properties, archaeological sites are very important to consider under this Criteria if there are no other properties associated with a person.

Criterion C:

The above discussion of Criterion C applies equally here. Again, context is key: identify the distinctive characteristics of the type, period, or method of construction and demonstrate how this site is a significant example of it. Examples of historical archaeological sites that could be eligible under Criterion C include the ruins of a steel mill that clearly embodies the distinctive characteristics of the type (see the National Register Bulletin *Guidelines for Evaluating and Registering Archeological Properties*). Other good examples might be the archaeological remains of industrial sites such as mills, canals, or furnaces where the archaeological remains can clearly convey or represent a significant pattern of building for a class of resources. As with any resource, a comparative context and integrity should be considered. While above ground remains may help strengthen the case for significance (because they are visible and non-archaeologists can “see” them), below ground remains may also be eligible under this Criteria. Some properties were intentionally built below ground (like mining properties, such as the Experimental Mine for instance).

Integrity

When evaluating archaeological sites under Criteria other than D, an important consideration (beyond the area of significance), is integrity as applied to archaeological sites (see **3.3. Assessing the National Register Integrity of Archaeological Sites**). Integrity is relative to significance. Consider what other properties can represent this particular resource under the context. As mentioned previously, an archaeologist must be able to read the significance and be able to communicate it through the National Register nomination. A couple of examples include Windsor Ruins or Bee Lake. Ruins are not required for a property to be eligible under Criteria other than D; however, they may help strengthen the case, or be easier for a non-archaeologist to understand.

If a property was not meant to be permanent (for instance, a WPA-era building that was built for the duration of a project), it cannot be held against a property if the building is no longer standing, particularly if foundations or other archaeological features remain.

Under Criteria A and B, the essential physical features during a site's association with an event or person must be intact. Setting, Feeling, and Association, as applied to archaeological sites, are very important. Would the person recognize the property today? If a property has poor integrity, but it is the only property left associated with that person, however, the property might still be eligible. Likewise, if you are considering an archaeological property and the structure once on the property is no longer standing, the property might still be eligible under Criterion B if the other aspects of integrity (setting, feeling, etc.) are still intact and there are no other properties associated with this aspect of the person's significance that exist.

Under Criterion C, Materials, Workmanship, and Design, as applied to archaeological sites would be paramount. Keep in mind that while Setting and Feeling might require a person to discuss visible surroundings, other aspects of integrity such as materials, workmanship, association, location, and design can easily be represented by below ground or non-visible (to the non-archaeologist) resources.

Rule 12.3.3. Assessing the National Register Integrity of Archaeological Sites

The following is a brief overview of how to apply the National Register's seven aspects of integrity (location, design, materials, workmanship, feeling, setting, and association) to archaeological sites nominated under any of the four Criteria of significance. It provides general guidance as to what aspects of integrity are most important under each of the Criteria, keeping in mind that different aspects of integrity may mean slightly different things or have more or less weight, depending on the Criterion or Criteria under which the site is significant, as well as its area(s) of significance. For Criterion D, the research questions being asked of the site are a very important consideration when assessing integrity.

For Criterion D, integrity of location, materials, design, and association are generally of paramount importance. Location is relatively straightforward; if the site remains in the place it was formed, it can be said to retain integrity of location. The place where the site formed is important, not necessarily the place where the archaeological remains were recorded (i.e. redeposited materials). Materials refers to the degree to which artifacts, ecofacts, and features have survived and is dependent on the research questions being asked. For example, if the research questions focus on the importance of floral resources in the diet, the site would need to yield seeds, cultivars, processing tools, etc. to retain integrity of materials. Design refers to the relationships or patterning of artifacts, ecofacts, and features. For example, a plowed site may retain integrity of design if the relationships between artifacts, ecofacts, and features remain as they were historically or prehistorically. Association under Criterion D refers to the relationship between the data present at the site and the research questions being asked. For example, if the research questions focus on status, the site would need to yield ceramics, personal items, etc. that are indicators of status. Remember, while a discussion of the National Register's seven aspects of integrity is helpful in establishing an argument for archaeological integrity under Criterion D, a nomination does not have to have such a discussion if the property is only nominated under D.

As long as the nomination discusses the level of preservation or quality of information contained within a district, site, or excavated assemblage in relation to the important research questions the property can answer, this is sufficient.

For Criteria A and B, location, design, setting, feeling and association are, generally, most important. As mentioned above, location means that the site remains in the place where it was formed. For archaeological sites significant under Criterion A or B, design means something slightly different; it refers to the layout or plan of a site. For example, if a military encampment site retained its avenues, tent platforms, and general layout, it would be said to retain integrity of design. To retain integrity of setting and feeling, the environment of the site should remain as it was historically. For example, if a site was originally a rural farmstead and the surrounding area remains a primarily rural, agricultural area, the site could be said to retain integrity of setting and feeling. For archaeological sites significant under Criterion A or B, association means something slightly different; it refers to the site's relationship to the historic event/trend or person for which it is significant. For example, a farmstead site significant for its role in an important battle would need to yield artifacts and features related to the battle to retain integrity of association for Criterion A.

Under Criterion C, design, materials, and workmanship are most important. As with Criteria A and B, design for Criterion C refers to the layout or plan of a site. For example, a stockaded village that represents a significant example of a type would be said to retain integrity of design if it retains its historic or prehistoric design and layout. For archaeological sites significant under Criterion C, integrity of workmanship is a reflection of the builder(s)'s or designer(s)'s skill in producing the original resource. For example, a house site that clearly shows the hand of a skilled architect or builder would retain integrity of workmanship, whether there are above-ground remains or not. For archaeological sites significant under Criterion C, integrity of materials is a reflection of the elements used to create the original resource. For example, a house site consisting of well-preserved architectural remains could be said to retain integrity of materials under Criterion C, regardless of whether the house is still standing or not.

As mentioned previously, this guidance is not meant to produce an exhaustive description of the seven aspects of integrity as they apply to archaeological sites. The evaluation of integrity is based on several factors including the Criterion or Criteria under which the site is being nominated, as well as the Area(s) of Significance. Further discussion of the aspects of integrity as they apply to archaeological sites is available in the National Register Bulletin *Guidelines for Evaluating and Registering Archeological Properties and Assessing Site Significance: a Guide for Archaeologists and Historians* by Donald L. Hardesty and Barbara J. Little (Published by AltaMira Press, California, 2009).

Rule 12.3.4. Supplemental Guidelines for Nominating Archeological Sites and Districts to the National Register of Historic Places

This guidance is for use in conjunction with the National Register Bulletin *Guidelines for Evaluating and Registering Archeological Properties*. If we have not commented on an item in the instructions below, follow the appropriate National Register Bulletin.

Keep in mind that one goal of nominating archeological sites and districts to the National Register of Historic Places is to increase the “visibility” of archeology for the public; therefore, the nomination should be concise and comprehensible to the layperson. The nomination is not meant to be a technical report; however, the nomination can include a technical report as an appendix.

In the narratives, do not give exact locational information, unless the location is generally known or if the locational information should be available for research or education or tourism, etc. All other information that should be restricted (see National Register Bulletin 29, *Guidelines for Restricting Information about Historic and Prehistoric Resources*) should be placed on a separate continuation sheet. In addition, do not enter the property owner information on the form. Provide this information on the notification sheet.

On the form, enter N/A for all categories that do not apply to the site or district.

Writing a Physical Description for an Archeological Site or District

1. **Introductory Paragraph:** The introductory paragraph is a critical part of the narrative. Write it so that it can stand on its own as an abstract that reads as a concise overview of the resource. Provide an overview of the physiography, **general** location(s), topography, and setting of the site or district. Identify the time period or archaeological period of occupation. End the introduction with a brief discussion of the site’s or district’s integrity, including approximately how much of the site has been impacted, both by excavation and by other impacts.
2. Describe, in a general way, the physical characteristics of the site or district, including site size(s) (both the horizontal and the vertical extent), site type(s), datasets present or potentially present (e.g. artifacts, ecofacts, features) and absolute or relative date(s). For multi-component sites or districts, describe each significant component separately, including vertical location(s) and extent(s) for stratified sites.
3. Describe the current and past setting and appearance of the site or district. Describe the current setting, appearance, topography, climate, vegetation, and wildlife. Then, if different, describe the setting, appearance, topography, climate, vegetation, and wildlife for each period of significance. Include a discussion of the site’s geomorphology, sedimentation, and soil development, as well. This description should not cover every

period during which the site was occupied, but should cover only the period(s) identified as significant in Section 8.

4. End the description with an explanation of the property's overall physical integrity. Summarize all natural and cultural impacts to the site or district. In this discussion, include an overview of all previous research at the site, both professional and avocational/amateur. Include background research, extent and purpose of any fieldwork and mapping, dates, and researchers and their affiliation. You must then assess how these impacts affect the property's ability to reflect its significance. If the site is eligible under Criteria other than D, the preparer will need to discuss each aspect of integrity (as applied to archaeological sites; see **3.2. Assessing the National Register Integrity of Archaeological Sites**) individually, then summarize overall integrity. If the site is eligible under only Criterion D, the preparer must discuss the archaeological integrity.

SECTION 8 – STATEMENT OF SIGNIFICANCE

Significant Dates (Form)

For prehistoric sites or districts, if several radiocarbon dates were obtained, place them in a table on a continuation sheet. The table should include the lab number, ¹⁴C date, and provenience of the sample. For historical archeological sites or districts, list the significant dates as you would for other properties; these can be based on artifacts, historic documents or maps, etc.

Narrative

1. Introductory paragraph: Begin the narrative Statement of Significance with a Summary of Significance. List the Criteria and Areas of Significance for which the site or district is significant. For each dataset identified in the Physical Description, briefly explain how it demonstrates the site's significance. This information should be expanded upon and justified in subsequent paragraphs. Identify the Period(s) of Significance and briefly explain how the beginning and ending dates were chosen.

2. Summarize the property's history in one or a few paragraphs. For Criterion D, to establish the importance of the information from the site, provide an overview of the current state of knowledge for the Period(s) of Significance. Remember, an archaeological site can be significant under Criteria other than D. For examples of archaeological sites that are significant under Criteria A, B, or C, consult the National Register Bulletin *Guidelines for Evaluating and Registering Archeological Properties* or **3.2. Evaluating Archaeological Sites Under Criteria other than D**.

3. Next, for each Criterion and Area of Significance explain why the property is significant. Compare the property to others of the same or similar period, characteristics, or association. For examples of other properties used in comparison,

be sure to use their name or site number, **general** locations, and brief descriptions. For multi-component sites, treat each component separately within the nomination.

ADDITIONAL DOCUMENTATION

Sketch Map/District Map

For archeological sites or districts, submit two copies of a site plan labeled with historic name, county and state. Include a clearly-labeled National Register boundary, north arrow, and scale bar. Be sure to locate all contributing and noncontributing resources and number/vantage point of each photo, where applicable. Also submit maps labeled with historic name, county and state. Include the clearly labeled National Register boundary, north arrow, scale bar, and location(s) of previous fieldwork.

Black and White Photographs

Submit two sets of black and white photos, properly labeled (*How to Complete the National Register Registration Form*, page 64). One set is for state files, the other for the National Park Service files in Washington, D.C. If a continuation sheet is used for photo information, the resource name, county, state and photo number must be labeled on each photograph. **Photographs must be processed according to the *National Register's Photographic Imaging Policy*.**

Provide photos of the setting, representative features (plan and profile); representative wall profiles, if applicable; and representative artifacts.

Rule 12.4.0. Criteria for Qualified Professional Archaeologists

Any archaeological investigation in Mississippi is required to be conducted by qualified archaeological professionals who meet the *Secretary of the Interior's Professional Qualification Standards*. Archaeological investigations conducted pursuant to federal and state laws must be conducted by qualified professionals. For additional information on these standards, see http://www.nps.gov/history/local-law/arch_stnds_9.htm

Throughout the duration of the archaeological investigation, either the Principal Investigator or Field Director shall be present in the field directing and monitoring the activities of the Field Crew. To meet the minimum professional qualifications in archaeology:

The *Principal Investigator* must:

1. Have a graduate degree in anthropology, archaeology, or closely related field, plus:
2. At least one year of full-time professional experience or equivalent specialized training in archaeological research, administration, or management;

3. At least four months of supervised field and analytic experience in general North American archaeology;
4. Have demonstrated ability to carry research to completion.

In addition to these minimum qualifications, a Principal Investigator in prehistoric archaeology shall have at least one year of full-time professional experience at a supervisory level in the study of archaeological resources of the prehistoric period. A Principal Investigator in historical archaeology shall have at least one year of full-time professional experience at a supervisory level in the study of archaeological resources of the historic period.

The **Field Director/s** shall also have a graduate degree in anthropology, archaeology, or closely related field, and have considerable experience and demonstrated ability to successfully function in a supervisory capacity. This person should possess formal training and considerable experience in archaeological theory, methodology, analysis, interpretation, and report preparation, and have demonstrated the ability to recognize and evaluate both historic and prehistoric cultural features.

Field Crew Member/s shall have an undergraduate degree in anthropology, archaeology, or closely related field, or possess considerable experience and have demonstrated the ability to recognize and evaluate both historic and prehistoric cultural features and artifacts.

Any archaeologist conducting archaeological research (Phase I, II, and III) should have access to:

1. Adequate field and laboratory equipment to conduct the survey, excavation, or other research; and
2. Adequate facilities to properly treat, analyze, and temporarily curate cultural material obtained as a result of the investigation.

The following requirements are those used by the National Park Service, and have been previously published in the Code of Federal Regulations, 36 CFR Part 61. The qualifications define minimum education and experience required to perform identification, evaluation, registration, and treatment activities. In some cases, additional areas or levels of expertise may be needed, depending on the complexity of the task and the nature of the historic properties involved. In the following definitions, a year of full-time professional experience need not consist of a continuous year of full-time work but may be made up of discontinuous periods of full-time or part-time work adding up to the equivalent of a year of full-time experience.

History

The minimum professional qualifications in history are a graduate degree in history or closely related field; or a bachelor's degree in history or closely related field plus one of the following:

1. At least two years of full-time experience in research, writing, teaching, interpretation, or other demonstrable professional activity with an academic institution, historic organization or agency, museum, or other professional institution; or
2. Substantial contribution through research and publication to the body of scholarly knowledge in the field of history.

Archeology

The minimum professional qualifications in archeology are a graduate degree in archeology, anthropology, or closely related field plus:

1. At least one year of full-time professional experience or equivalent specialized training in archeological research, administration or management;
2. At least four months of supervised field and analytic experience in general North American archeology, and
3. Demonstrated ability to carry research to completion.
4. In addition to these minimum qualifications, a professional in prehistoric archeology shall have at least one year of full-time professional experience at a supervisory level in the study of archeological resources of the prehistoric period. A professional in historic archeology shall have at least one year of full-time professional experience at a supervisory level in the study of archeological resources of the historic period.

Architectural History

The minimum professional qualifications in architectural history are a graduate degree in architectural history, art history, historic preservation, or closely related field, with coursework in American architectural history, or a bachelor's degree in architectural history, art history, historic preservation or closely related field plus one of the following:

1. At least two years of full-time experience in research, writing, or teaching in American architectural history or restoration architecture with an academic institution, historical organization or agency, museum, or other professional institution; or
2. Substantial contribution through research and publication to the body of scholarly knowledge in the field of American architectural history.

Architecture

The minimum professional qualifications in architecture are a professional degree in architecture plus at least two years of full-time experience in architecture; or a State license to practice architecture.

Historic Architecture

The minimum professional qualifications in historic architecture are a professional degree in architecture or a State license to practice architecture, plus one of the following:

1. At least one year of graduate study in architectural preservation, American architectural history, preservation planning, or closely related field; or
2. At least one year of full-time professional experience on historic preservation projects.
3. Such graduate study or experience shall include detailed investigations of historic structures, preparation of historic structures research reports, and preparation of plans and specifications for preservation projects.

Source: National Historic Preservation Act, Section 112 (a)

Rule 12.4.1. Consultants List

This is a list of individuals who have represented themselves as being willing and qualified to do archaeological survey work in Mississippi. The list has been compiled merely as a public service by the Mississippi Department of Archives and History and in no way constitutes a certified, recommended, or preferred list of archaeologists. It should be understood that there may be other individuals who are willing to do survey work. As with any consultant/contract work, fees do vary and we suggest you compare the services offered.

[Archaeological Consulting List \(PDF\)](#)

Consultants wishing to be placed on the list should send vitas to archaeology@mdah.ms.gov.

Archaeologists working in the state must meet the [Secretary of Interior's Qualifications Standards](#) and the qualifications listed in these Standards.

Rule 12.5.0. Archaeological Site Types and Historic Themes

Rule 12.5.1. Definition of an Archaeological Site

An archaeological site is a concentration of artifacts, ecofacts, or modifications to the landscape that are associated with past human activity and retain their context. An archaeological site in Mississippi is defined as the physical remains of an area of concentrated human activity for which a boundary can be established. Under the general definition, a broad range of site types would qualify as archaeological sites without the identification of any artifacts. To establish a boundary for archaeological sites manifested exclusively by artifacts, the recovery of a minimum of three items is needed, related either temporally or functionally and located within a spatially restricted area no greater than 30-x-30 meters (98.4-x-98.4 ft.) in size. MDAH will consider exceptions to these conditions on a case-by-case basis.

Rule 12.5.2 Archaeological Site Types

Site types presented here are to provide conformity in descriptive terminology and are by no means meant to be exhaustive in scope. Site types are to be used in text descriptions on site cards and within the body of reports/documents.

Architectural Scatter (Construction Materials)

An architectural scatter represents cultural artifacts and debris that consist entirely of structural and/or construction materials. This includes: architectural marble, brick, cement/concrete, cinderblock, fencing (e.g. barbed wire, staples, etc.), flooring (e.g. linoleum), nails/nail fragments, sewer and water pipes, spikes, roofing tiles, and window glass.

Ceramic Scatter

A ceramic scatter represents cultural artifacts that consist solely of prehistoric ceramics.

Commercial/Industrial

Commercial/industrial sites refer to sites associated with the production, manufacture, extraction, transport, marketing, sale/exchange, or storage of a service/goods/product or range of services/goods/products, in essence the material culture aspects of commerce and industry. As such, site types can include a wide range of activities, from banking, early ironworks, and water-powered mills to large modern factories, as well as ancillary sites and structures such as worker housing, warehouses, and infrastructure.

Mining and other extractive industries

Mining and other extractive industries (Phase I, II, and III) are made up of multiple components and may have different functions/technological uses to utilize the natural resource being required. For this reason, not only would this section include mining resources such as rock, ore, or coal, but should also include activities such as silviculture, oil and gas, cotton, indigo, catfish industry, and lumber industry. Mississippi historically has had a multitude of extractive industries that utilize clays found around the state, such as bentonite, ball clays, fullers earth, and shale. Historic property types under this classification include: extraction (such as silviculture, gravel pits, mines, natural gas fields and pipelines, etc), beneficiation (such as a procession plant to make cement or brick), and refining (such as lumber mills, oil refineries, natural gas processing plants, etc.) These types of landscapes make it possible to learn about its historical contribution and answer questions about regional agriculture, business, commerce, settlement patterns, ethnic heritage, engineering, labor and laws. The property may be associated with a significant person in the past, such as LO Crosby with Picayune's lumber industry) or it may have a distinctive engineering or architecture associated with it. (See NRHP Bulletin #42 for further information.)

Domestic Scatter

A domestic scatter represents cultural artifacts and debris that consists entirely of household items. This includes: arms (e.g. bullets, gun parts, etc.), cans, clothing items (e.g. buttons, buckles, clothing fasteners, etc.), ceramics (e.g. coarse and refined earthenware, stoneware, porcelain, semi- and porcelaneous wares), currency, electrical (e.g. battery cores, light bulbs, insulators, sockets, etc.), flora/fauna, furniture items (e.g. mirror glass, upholstery tacks, etc.), glass (e.g. bottle, container, dish, flask, jar, medicinal/cosmetic, stemware, tableware, tumbler, vase, etc.), household hardware (e.g. doorknob, key, lock, hinge, hook, etc.), lids, personal items (e.g. brushes, eyeglasses, jewelry, pipes, etc.), sewing items (e.g. needle, thimble, etc.), tack

(livestock items – horseshoes, bridle, bit, etc.), tools, toys/gaming (e.g. dice, doll parts, marbles, etc.), utensils (e.g. forks, knives, spoon, etc.), and writing items (inkwell, pencil, slate, etc.).

Domestic and Architectural Scatter

A domestic and architectural scatter represents cultural artifacts and debris consisting of both domestic and architectural material as defined above.

Linear Resources (Phase I, II, and III)

Linear resources are those that manifest as long, narrow individual structures, or as lined structures (classified by the National Parks Service as districts). These can include those that are designed to convey something (people, goods, power, communications, etc.) across long distances, such as roads, railroads, trails, canals, irrigation and mining ditches, and transmission lines, and those that are designed to bound or separate areas or contain something, such as fence lines, walls, and levees. They frequently (but not always) occur within a right-of-way spanning many individual properties, communities, counties, states, or even nations.

Lithic Scatter

A lithic scatter represents cultural artifacts and debris that consist entirely of lithic (i.e., stone) tools and chipped stone debris.

Lithic and Ceramic Scatter

A lithic and ceramic scatter represents cultural artifacts and debris consisting of both lithic and prehistoric ceramic material as defined above.

Lithic and/or Ceramic Scatter with Daub

A lithic and/or ceramic scatter with daub/fired clay represents cultural artifacts and debris consisting of either lithic material and daub/fired clay, ceramics and daub/fired clay, or both lithics and ceramics with daub/fired clay. Daub and fired clay are created when clay is hardened by fire. Daub represents mud plaster used to construct wattle-and-daub houses and normally exhibits stick impressions from the wattle. Conversely, fired clay lacks the stick impressions and may represent daub, plaster from around the smoke hole in the roof, or pieces of a hearth.

Military

Military sites refer to archaeological sites associated with military operations, such as barracks/living quarters, battlefields, encampments, fortifications, foxholes, prisons/POW camps, staging areas, training areas, trenches, etc. Military sites are easily defined archaeologically, existing as relatively compact social, cultural, and physical units. These sites and their occupants exhibit a cultural behavior that is highly structural and stratified. As a result, they are functionally unique in that they provide a unique perspective on the behavioral aspects of a culture or cultures in conflict (i.e. at war). For more information, see *The Historical*

Archaeology of Military Sites: Method and Topic (2010 – Texas A&M University Press) edited by Clarence Raymond Geier, Lawrence E. Babits, Douglas Dowell Scott, and David G. Orr.

Battlefields (Phase I, II, and III)

Battlefields are made up of two components- battlefield land and associated sites. Battlefield land refers to sites where armed conflict, fighting, or warfare occurred between two opposing military organization or forces recognized as such by their respective cultures (not civil unrest). Associated sites refers to sites occupied before, during, or after a battle at which events occurred that had a direct influence on the tactical development of the battle or the outcome of the battle. A site must be associated with a battle in order to be considered an associated site.

Mound Sites

A mound is a deliberately constructed elevated earthen structure or earthwork, intended for a range of potential uses. Native Americans built a variety of mounds, including flat-topped/platform mounds, rounded cones, and ridge-shaped mounds. Some mounds took on unusual shapes, such as the outline of cosmologically significant animals, or effigy mounds. Some mounds, such as a few in Wisconsin, have rock formations, or petroforms within them, on them, or near them.

Other Site Types

Landscapes (Phase I, II, and III)

It is relatively simple to determine when a building or structure has lost its structural integrity and any potential significance lies in its value as an archaeological site. More difficult, however, is deciding when to treat a landscape as an archaeological site. Abandoned land, when undisturbed by later development or construction, may retain surface or subsurface features that can provide information important to an understanding of historic or prehistoric activities. When land historically cleared and cultivated is reforested, visual qualities of the historic period are lost, yet landscape characteristics, such as walls, ditches, roadways, streams, and canals, may still be in place and capable of indicating important patterns of land use or organization.

Landscape archaeology may involve the examination of characteristics, such as walls, road remnants, trail ruts, foundations, and refuse sites. It may also draw information from observable patterns of erosion and vegetation. A number of techniques may be used: analysis of soil stratigraphy; analysis of pollens and other sediments through flotation and core sampling to determine planting patterns; surficial surveys to identify remnant vegetation, boundary demarcations, and evidence of land use; analyses of existing vegetation or plant succession; remote sensing to detect buried walls, foundations, and roadways; and excavation to uncover buried irrigation systems, canals, or planting beds.

Assessments of significance are based on well-formulated research design that considers the historic contexts for the study area. The research design needs to indicate the landscape

characteristics that are represented in the site and the information the site is likely to provide about the landscape characteristics that shaped an area in history or prehistory. It must explain how the information will add to an understanding of the property. The lack of other sources of information, such as written records or intact properties, generally increases the importance of an archaeological site. Please refer to NRHP Bulletin #30.

Plantations, Tenant Farms, and Farmsteads (Phase I, II, and III)

Plantations, Tenant Farms, and Farmsteads are made up of many components (natural and man-made)- houses, outbuildings, ancillary/dependency buildings (carriage houses blacksmith shops, commissaries/stores, etc.), gardens, fields, fence lines, tree lines, roadways, creeks, hills, etc. They can also include churches, schools, and cemeteries. These components when combined with one another into a landscape, start to develop context for the human behavior and ideas of that time period. This category of landscapes includes antebellum plantations, tenant farms (and communities), urban farmsteads, etc. From this type of landscape it is possible to learn more about issues of gender, ethnicity, multiculturalism, etc. These landscapes have a "macro view" when talking about the entire landscape (i.e.: the entire antebellum plantation and/or the associated community/similar estates and plantations in the region) and a "micro-view" that can focus on individual elements of that landscape (i.e.: slave quarters). Each one of these "views" of a landscape can help to answer different questions about human life.

Traditional Cultural Properties (TCP)

The term "traditional cultural property" (TCP) is not contained in NHPA, nor in the ACHP's regulations. Rather, it was officially coined in 1990 when the National Register published Bulletin 38 to provide guidance that interpreted the NHPA as applying to properties that had traditional cultural significance to communities. Bulletin 38 is widely utilized as guidance in identification, evaluation, and consideration of effects of federal decisions on historic properties with traditional cultural significance (i.e., TCPs), including those of cultural importance to Indian tribes as well as other traditional communities. Bulletin 38 defines a TCP as an historic property "that is eligible for inclusion in the National Register because of its association with cultural practices or beliefs of a living community that (a) are rooted in that community's history, and (b) are important in maintaining the continuing cultural identity of the community" (Parker and King 1998:1).

Like all historic properties, to be eligible for listing in the NRHP, a TCP must generally be at least 50 years old, and meet at least one of the following four evaluation criteria found at 36 CFR Section 60.4. In addition to these criteria, the NHPA also contains seven criteria considerations that may render a property eligible that is ordinarily considered ineligible for the NRHP.

Some examples of traditional cultural properties would include:

1. A location associated with the traditional beliefs of a Native American group about its origins, its cultural history, or the nature of the world;

2. A rural community whose organization, buildings, and structures, or patterns of land use reflect the cultural traditions valued by its long-term residents;
3. An urban neighborhood that is the traditional home of a particular cultural group and that reflects its beliefs and practices;
4. A location where Native American religious practitioners have historically gone, and are known or thought to go today, to perform ceremonial activities in accordance with traditional cultural rules of practices; and
5. A location where a community has traditionally carried out economic, artistic or other cultural practices important in maintaining its historic identity.

Rule 12.5.3. Historic Periods & Themes

Agriculture (Farming)/Subsistence

This theme addresses the different strategies that cultures develop to procure, process, and store food. Beyond the basic studies of site function based on the analysis of a site location, the tool types from the site, and the food remains recovered, this theme also explores the reconstruction of past habitats from the perspective of their potential for human exploitation, caloric studies on the procurement and processing of food, and subsistence strategies over time within and between neighboring regions.

Agriculture specifically refers to the process and technology of cultivating soil, producing crops, and raising livestock and plants. Property types for the subsistence/agriculture theme include resources related to food production such as prehistoric villages, small family farmsteads (urban and rural), tenant and sharecropping sites; large plantations with representative or important collections of farm and outbuildings (such as slave quarters, kitchens, icehouses, etc.), and other agricultural complexes such as agri-businesses; sites or properties associated with meat or fruit processing; storage facilities; agricultural fields; animal hunting and kill sites, stockyard, barn, chicken coop, hunting corral, hunting run, or apiary; fishing facilities or sites; horticultural facilities; agricultural outbuildings; and irrigation facilities.

Antebellum Mississippi

This period explores the decades leading up to the Civil War, a time during which Mississippi witnessed a succession of profound, and often wrenching, changes that remade the state. Through a combination of assimilationist programs, debts accrued at federal trading houses, treaties, and warfare, the United States had gained control of loose pieces of native land, but many native nations—including the Choctaw and Chickasaw—remained entrenched on their lands until the passage of the Indian Removal Act (1830), allowed the national government to purchase the lands of native confederacies and nations residing east of the Mississippi River and to relocate these people to federal lands west of the river.

The years between 1832 and 1854 saw the largest population growth in Mississippi's history, and more counties organized than at any other time. Numerous railroads were chartered, sea-going

steamboats came upriver to Natchez, and many internal improvements to travel were made. New lands opening, the rise of cotton as a major cash crop, and the means to transport goods easily all led to growing prosperity for the state. However, by 1840 the bubble burst and the state was in financial straits. This "panic" did not last long, and by the 1850s the state was again experiencing prosperity.

However, during this time there was growing strife between the northern and southern parts of the state, mainly over the issue of slavery. This mirrored a larger debate in the entire United States. The Mexican War in 1849 aided the pro-slavery party, but the admission of California as a free state in 1850 put the abolitionists ahead in the national congress. When Lincoln was elected president in 1860, the pro-slavery states began to move towards succession from the Union, and in 1861 Mississippi voted to leave.

Cemetery/Funerary

This theme concerns the investigation of grave sites for demographic data to study population composition, health, and mortality within prehistoric and historic societies. Property types include cemeteries, burial site(s)/ossuary; graves and burials such as a burial cache, burial mound, or grave; and mortuaries such as a mortuary site, funeral home, cremation area, or crematorium.

Civil Rights

This period explores the American Civil Rights Movement in the late 1950s and 1960s represents a pivotal event in world history. The positive changes it brought to voting and civil rights continue to be felt throughout the United States and much of the world. Although this struggle for black equality was fought on hundreds of different "battlefields" throughout the United States, many observers at the time described the state of Mississippi as the most racist and violent. Mississippi's lawmakers, law enforcement officers, public officials, and private citizens worked long and hard to maintain the segregated way of life that had dominated the state since the end of the Civil War in 1865. In contrast, the larger Civil Rights Movement can attribute its success to the tactic of nonviolence contrasting with the exposure of violence-prone policemen, sheriffs, vigilante groups, and other defenders of the status quo.

Depression Era

This period explores the collapse of the U.S. stock market in 1929, signaling the onset of the Great Depression, a worldwide economic calamity that would persist through the 1930s, forcing farm families deeper into poverty, debt, illness, hunger and despair. Planters, tenants, and sharecroppers watched helplessly as farm income dwindled from \$191 million in 1929 to a mere \$41 million in 1932. Moreover, any discussion of the farmer's dilemma after 1930 must include crimes of nature: boll weevils; the floods of 1927, 1932, and 1936; and the great southern drought of 1930–31.

The state's tiny manufacturing sector also suffered. Between 1929 and 1932, 1,165 small plants, more than 800 of them sawmills, ceased operations. The number of jobs in lumbering, fishing, manufacturing, and railroading dropped from 52,000 in 1929 to 28,000 in 1932, and payrolls dropped from \$42 million to \$14 million. In turn, the lack of consumer purchasing power devastated the state's retail business. With agriculture, manufacturing, and retail sales languishing, the banking system—never one of the nation's strongest—began to buckle. Property values shrank to their lowest level since 1850, payrolls dropped, and savings deposits fell by 50 percent from 1930 to 1933. Bank failures began in 1930, when fifty-nine banks went under, followed by fifty-six in 1931 and twelve in 1932.

Unemployment figures fluctuated throughout the decade. Some indication of the serious nature of unemployment emerges from the fact that by June 1943, when the New Deal's Works Progress Administration was liquidated, \$117 million had been allocated for the state, mostly for wages. Significant recovery did not begin until 1936, when Gov. Hugh L. White's Balance Agriculture with Industry initiatives joined the massive injection of federal money into Mississippi by Pres. Franklin D. Roosevelt's New Deal (\$450 million from 1933 to 1939). The onset of World War II brought robust economic growth and a modicum of social reform that neither Mississippi's political leaders nor New Deal largesse could achieve.

Education

This theme relates to the process of conveying or acquiring knowledge or skills through systematic instruction, training, or study, whether through public or private efforts. Potential site types include schools (single or multiple structures, trade or technical facilities), academies, research facilities, colleges (universities, community, junior colleges), libraries, education-related resources (dormitory, housing, boarding school, etc.). In general, little archaeological material is found related to educational activities at typical domestic assemblages. On school sites in particular, many objects associated with school life (notebooks, paper, etc.) are not likely to have survived while other objects such as lunchboxes, backpacks, books, etc. were taken to and from school and will most likely not be found within the archaeological record. Typical finds include items pencils and erasers, inkwells, desk frames, chalk and slate, fountain ink pen that when combined with archaeological excavation, oral histories and documentary sources provide insights into access to and extent of instructional and/or vocational training.

Ethnicity/Immigration

This theme explores the material manifestations of ethnic diversity and the movement and interaction of people of different ethnic heritages through time and space in Mississippi. While all property types may be associated with this theme, properties that exemplify the ethos of immigrant or ethnic groups, the distinctive cultural traditions of peoples that migrated and/or were transplanted to Mississippi (i.e. Asian-American, African-American, French, German,

Spanish, etc.), or the dominant aspirations of an ethnic group are of particular interest (i.e. Blues). Also related to this theme are sites associated with persons of distinctive ethnic heritage who made a significant contribution to our history and culture in any field of human endeavor.

Historic Indian

This theme addresses and recognizes American Indian tribal groups with historic associations with Mississippi, the most recognizable amongst them being the Natchez, Choctaw, and Chickasaw. With the arrival of Spanish, French, and English settlers in the New World, native societies in the region connected with the Atlantic market economy, a source for guns, blankets, and many other trade items. Europeans offered these trade materials in exchange for Indian slaves and deerskins, currencies that radically altered the relationships between tribal groups. Smallpox and other diseases followed along the trading paths. Colonial competition between the French and English helped spark the Natchez rebellion, the Chickasaw–French wars, the Choctaw civil war, and a half-century of client warfare between the Choctaws and Chickasaws. The Treaty of Paris in 1763 forced Mississippi’s pro-French tribes to move west of the Mississippi River. The Diaspora included the Tunicas, Houmas, Pascagoulas, Biloxis, and a portion of the Choctaw confederacy. In the early nineteenth century, Mississippi’s remaining Choctaws and Chickasaws faced a series of treaties with the United States government that ended in destitution and removal. Despite the intense pressures of European invasion and U.S. duplicity, the Mississippi tribes survived by adapting and contributing to their rapidly evolving world.

Industrial/Commercial

This theme explores the technology and process of managing materials, labor, and equipment to produce and trade goods, services, and commodities. Included in this theme are activities related to the extraction, production, and processing of materials such as quarrying, mining, manufacturing, lumbering, technology, electronics, pottery, textiles, food processing, distilling, fuel, building materials, tools, transportation, seafood, and many other industries. Industrial site types include quarries, mills (grist, carding, textile, and woodworking), factories, distilleries, shipyards, mines, forges and furnaces, kilns, laboratories, power plants, dams, tanneries, village shops, and other small crafts and industrial sites. Commercial site types include businesses, professional, organizational, and financial institutions, and specialty stores; and department stores, restaurants, warehouses, and trade sites.

Landscape/Landscape Features

This theme explores the historic, cultural, scenic, visual, and design qualities of cultural landscapes, emphasizing the reciprocal relationships affecting the natural and the human-built environment. Investigations include studies into spatial organizational patterns, land use, response to natural features, circulation networks, boundaries, vegetation, clustered arrangements of buildings, fences, and paths, structures, and small-scale landscape elements. Associated

property types include not only deliberately designed or maintained landscapes such as parking lots, parks, plazas, gardens, street furniture, and objects, conservation areas, and rural historic districts but also unoccupied land, underwater sites, and natural features such as a mountain, valley, promontory, tree, river, island, pond, or lake.

Military

This theme relates to the system of defending the territory and sovereignty of a people and encompasses all military activities, battles, strategic locations, and events important in military history. It includes property types related to arms production and storage (i.e. magazine, gun manufactory, or armory); fortifications (prehistoric [palisaded village] and historic [batteries, bunkers]); military facilities; battle sites (battlefield); coast guard facilities (lighthouse, coast guard station, pier, dock, etc.); naval facilities; air facilities (landing strips, hangers, etc.); and prisoner of war camps/locales.

Included within this theme are Civil War resources. Given Mississippi's location along the strategic Mississippi River made the state a scene of a number of major battles inside its boundaries or nearby. The names Vicksburg, Jackson, Raymond, Port Gibson, Corinth, Iuka, and Meridian resonate in Civil War historical writing as do nearby Shiloh, New Orleans, Memphis, and Port Hudson.

Post Reconstruction

This period explores the political and social climate immediately following the end Reconstruction in 1875 through the turn of the twentieth century. Due to a number of factors, including the physical devastation of the various military campaigns across the state, the freeing of the slaves, and the political corruption of the Reconstruction era, Mississippi's economy was in ruins by the 1870s. Poverty was rampant across the state and affected all social classes, particularly newly freed blacks, and many farmers went bankrupt. The practices of tenant farming and sharecropping became widespread and entrenched in the state, further degrading the economy and increasing the level of individual poverty.

The loss of the slave labor force throughout the South, combined with severe financial setbacks suffered by Southern states as the defeated party, necessitated changes in the overall economic system, giving rise to the development and growth of the tenant farming/sharecropping. The reorganization that occurred was primarily based on changes in the relationship between management and labor, and resulted in the broad dispersion of smaller, individual farmsteads (share-croppers and tenant farmers) within the former boundaries of the plantation. Former slaves and non-landholding whites ultimately became a part of this new system wherein farmland was rented for cash or a share of the seasonal yield. Shifts in settlement related to plantation reorganization apparently occurred throughout the state.

The nucleated form of settlement found on antebellum plantations continued to predominate until freedmen acquired (1) freedom from direct control and continuous supervision; (2) their own

homes in proximity to cropland at least functionally, if not nominally under their control; and (3) use and control of mules. As these aspects of freedom were slowly realized, freed blacks were able to move away from the plantation village complex and occupy outlying tracts within the planter's holdings. As the industrial revolution continued, European demand for American cotton grew. The South responded to this demand, producing about 10,000,000 more bales of cotton in the four years preceding 1881 than it had during the 15 years immediately preceding the Civil War. Apparently the tenant farm system was more efficient at producing cotton than was the slave labor system. However, a persistent problem with tenancy was its creation of impoverished white and black farmers, forced to mortgage future crops for present needs. In years when crops failed, these farmers went deeper into debt. Not until World War II (1939-1945), when widespread mechanization of cotton production made sharecropping unprofitable, did the economy begin to improve and the system of share-cropping begin to disappear.

Pre-World War II Mississippi (1900-1941)

This period explores the first four decades of the twentieth century and the rapid social and economic changes that preceded World War II. Shortly after the turn of the century, growing agitation and dissatisfaction among small farmers led to the growth of the Populist Movement and the temporary ousting of the Democrats from power. The success of the combined Populist/Republican party was short-lived, however. With the adoption of popular primary elections, Democrats won back the legislature and governorship of the state by promising new reforms, espousing racist rhetoric, and ranting against the control of the economy by Northern banks, railroads, and other corporate interests. Several reforms, including larger budgets for education, lighter tax burdens on small farmers, state regulation of railroads, banks, and other corporate enterprises, and reform of the state penal system, were enacted during the initial decades of the twentieth century.

Mississippi's economy had only started to recover by the onset of the Great Depression in the 1930s. To counteract the rapid decline of the economy, federal farm programs associated with President Franklin Roosevelt's New Deal and the Works Progress Administration (WPA) encouraged better soil conservation 38 practices and greater crop diversification. The state government focused on industrial growth, creating the Balance Agriculture With Industry (BAWI) program in 1936, which enabled state and local governments to issue bonds for the construction of industrial plants to be leased to private industries. The addition of tax incentives for some industries resulted in a moderate increase in the industrial section by 1940. During World War II, the state's mild climate attracted the Army and Air Force, which constructed a number of camps and bases such as Camp Shelby near Hattiesburg and Keesler Air Force Base in Biloxi. Ingalls Shipbuilding at Pascagoula helped create a wartime economic boom on the Gulf Coast; the availability of jobs with good wages brought former sharecroppers into the towns. Agricultural production to support the war effort and to help U.S. allies also helped improve the profitability of both large and small farming operations such that, when the war ended, most farmers had surplus funds that could be used for mechanization.

Post World War II Mississippi (1942-present)

This period explores the elements that shaped modern Mississippi (excluding Civil Rights, which is its own period of emphasis). After World War II, federal crop subsidies and high commodity prices added to the farmers' surpluses, and mechanization of Mississippi's farms began in earnest. Tractors, mechanical cotton pickers, and combines drastically reduced the need for field labor, resulting in the dispossession of tenants and the gradual centralization of small farms under single owners. By 1990, the typical farm in Mississippi consisted of hundreds of acres maintained by a small workforce, with the percentage of the population engaged in farming representing only 2.7 percent compared to 75 percent in 1900.

The introduction of herbicides, defoliants, and pesticides increased the yield and health of most crops, and allowed for greater diversification. Cotton, although still an important crop in the state, no longer dominated the agricultural economy. Soybeans, rice, poultry, and catfish together produced more than twice as much income. Faced with the challenge of employing the work force formerly employed on the state's farms, every governor since World War II has encouraged industrialization to bring more industrial jobs to the state. In 1951, 40 new plants providing 5,200 new jobs located in Mississippi and, by 1965, industrial employment passed agricultural employment for the first time. By 1990, almost 23 percent of the work force worked in factories, while approximately 32 percent worked in the trade and service industries. The largest employers were manufacturers of clothing, food products, furniture, and lumber and wood products; and processors of agricultural products (poultry and catfish) and wood products (paper and pulp mills, furniture). Centers of heavy industry have arisen along the Gulf Coast and in cities along the Mississippi River like Natchez, Vicksburg, and Greenville.

Protohistoric Period

The protohistoric period, where the late prehistoric period and the early historic one overlap in a limbo that in the Southeast covers the hiatus between earliest exploration and first permanent settlement by Europeans. Before and during the protohistoric period Mississippian chiefdoms collapsed, whether from internal causes or from introduced European disease. The social disruption that resulted from such collapse led to population movements and consolidations in a search for a renewal of stability. New mechanisms for exercising power arose among the native population, mechanisms directly connected to the exploitation of the new European element.

The context of the protohistoric period, then, is an ideal one for the study of rapid--even drastic--culture change, and an explanation of what happened to Indian groups during this period is crucial to an understanding of why their successors differed so radically from the populations of the prehistoric Mississippian period. There has been a tendency to explain this radical difference simply by the effects of European contact, but considerable evidence is beginning to suggest that the older notion of a "Mississippian Decline," a natural exhaustion of Mississippian culture, may

not be entirely incorrect, and that some Mississippian groups had begun to reorganize before contact.

Reconstruction

This period explores the time period relating to the reconstruction and recovery process Mississippi experienced following the Civil War. As part of a plan to restore the Union, in 1865, President Andrew Johnson appointed William L. Sharkey as provisional governor of Mississippi. Under Sharkey's direction, a new state constitution abolishing slavery was drafted. A new state government, composed largely of former Confederates, was elected in October of that year, and promptly enacted the Black Code that reimposed many of the restrictions on freed blacks, including disenfranchisement.

In response, the Radical wing of the Republican Party in Congress wrested control of the Reconstruction process from Johnson and, in 1867, imposed military rule across the South. Republican politicians, many relocated from the North, took control of the state government. Readmission to the Union was made conditional on the adoption of new constitutions that removed the restrictions on freed blacks and gave them the right to vote and hold public office. After several tries, a state constitution acceptable to Congress was finally approved by the electorate in 1869. Mississippi was formally readmitted to the Union on February 23, 1870. In the 1870s, as former Confederates began to receive federal pardons that allowed them to once again hold public office, the Democratic Party began to take back control of the state government from the Republicans.

The relatively rapid rise to power of the Democrats during this period was in part attributed to the hatred of the electorate for what they saw as outsiders and exploiters and in part to the intimidation of blacks and Republicans by terrorist organizations like the Ku Klux Klan. In the elections of 1875, Democrats gained control of the state legislature, and in 1876, replaced the Republican Governor and Lieutenant Governor with Democrats. The Democratic Party remained in power throughout most of the next century.

Technology/Engineering Theme

While the technological aspects of a culture form the primary basis of interpretation of all themes, this theme relates primarily to the utilization of and evolutionary changes in material culture as a society adapts to its physical, biological, and cultural environments. Research questions here range from artifact studies on the identification of changing tool types, their various functions, and how they were manufactured to more general issues related to the organization of labor and presence/absence of craft or occupational specialization. All site types may contribute to the understanding of this theme. This theme also involves the practical application of scientific principles to design, construct, and operate equipment, machinery, and structures to serve human needs. Property types include wood, metal, and concrete bridges,

highways, dams, canals, railroads, air-transport, and other transportation-related works, and various industrial structures, engines, and machinery.

Transportation/Communication Theme

This theme relates to the process and technology of conveying passengers, materials, and information. Studies focus on transportation and communication networks involving roads, water, canals, railroads, and air as well as on the various structures, vehicles, equipment, and technology associated with each mode. Property types may be generally classified as either rail-related, air-related, water-related, road-related, or pedestrian-related. Examples include railroads, stations, depots, engine houses, and trains; airports, airplanes, landing fields, and space vehicles; and research facilities associated with transportation systems; boats and other watercraft, piers, and wharves, ferries, lighthouses; canals and associated structures, locks, boats; roads and turnpikes, tollhouses, automobiles and other vehicles such as streetcars; and boardwalks, walkways, and trails.

Source: 36 CFR 61.4 (b)(1)

Rule 12.6.0. Archaeological Survey and Investigations

The standards presented in the following sections represent minimum standards for field survey, testing, excavation, and report writing. Their application to other archaeological projects in the state is discussed in a subsequent section. These standards are not intended to constrain or limit research efforts; investigators are encouraged to develop projects and reports that exceed these standards, explore new technological approaches, and examine Mississippi's cultural history in new and creative ways.

Rule 12.6.1. Preliminary Literature Review and Records Search

All archaeological studies (whether reconnaissance, Phase I survey, Phase II testing, or Phase III data recovery) shall be preceded by a literature review and records search. This search will include a review of the Mississippi Archaeological Site Files to identify previously recorded sites in and near the project area, as well as other sources to provide the prehistoric and historic context for the study. Researchers should examine pertinent holdings in some or all of the following institutions (See NRHP Bulletin #39 for more information):

1. Mississippi Archaeological Site File
2. Historic Preservation Division

The Historic Preservation Division, Mississippi Department of Archives and History, maintains a library of archaeological assessment reports and NRHP files on archaeological sites nominated for or listed on the NRHP. Although the NRHP listing is available in published and electronic form, these lists only include those sites already listed and not properties whose eligibility has been determined or whose listing may be pending. *In addition, there are architectural files for*

standing structures (extant and non-extant) that may have archaeological resources or the potential to have archaeological resources associated with them that may be within the proposed project area.

1. Mississippi Department of Archives and History
2. University Libraries (USM, University of Mississippi, Mississippi State, etc).
3. Online map collections, county and state histories, etc. that are available.
4. Other institutions or resources that can be consulted include:
 - a. Regional Development Commission (Historic Preservationist)
 - b. County Historical Societies, Local Historians, Local Museums,
 - c. and Local Libraries
 - d. County Courthouses and Agencies
 - e. Mississippi Historical Society, Jackson;
 - f. Mississippi Library Commission, Jackson;
 - g. Archives and Museums in Other States
 - h. Federal Archives (Southeastern Archaeological Center, Tallahassee)
 - i. National Archives (East Point Regional Branch)
 - j. Smithsonian Institution
 - k. BLM GLO Records (<http://www.glorerecords.blm.gov/search/default.aspx>)

Rule 12.6.2. Archival Research for Evaluation (Phase II Testing) and Data Recovery (Phase III) Projects

In addition to the literature search and archival research necessary for a Phase I survey, additional historical information may be required for site evaluation (Phase II testing) and data recovery (Phase III) projects. Additional historical research may include:

1. Census data, such as Agricultural, Population, and Industrial Censuses.
2. Slave Schedules.
3. Family papers, wills, probate inventories, daybooks, etc.
4. Informant interviews (particularly for early 20th century sites).
5. Tax Records.
6. Title Search

Rule 12.6.3. Archaeological Survey and Methodology

Visual Inspection/ Visual Pedestrian Survey

When field conditions warrant, systematic visual inspection of plowed fields and surface collection of artifacts has proven to be a highly effective and efficient method of site survey. Systematic surface collection is encouraged after re-plowing and disking of previously plowed

fields to a depth no greater than the previous disturbance prior to inspection. However, even in previously plowed areas, the clearing of trees and large brush to facilitate surface collection has the strong potential to disturb sub-plowzone soils and, therefore, is not regarded as an acceptable methodology. All exposed surfaces are to be inspected. If an area has greater than 50% surface visibility but is in a dynamic depositional environment (e.g., the foot of a slope or adjacent to an aggrading waterway) or the scope of work includes substantial/significant sub-plowzone disturbance, then 30-m (~100-ft.) interval subsurface testing is required.

Highly eroded areas, where subsoil is visible at or just below the surface, as well as recently plowed fields are the most common instances where such high visibility exists. The archaeologists' judgment concerning visibility is especially critical in fallow or dry fields, where close-interval (30 m) subsurface testing will be necessary. In general, pedestrian survey will be systematic in coverage, with the maximum interval between surveyors not exceeding 30 m.

Surface visibility and topography alone do not sufficiently define a site. When an archaeological site is identified by visual inspection alone, excavation of at least two shovel test pits (STPs) is needed to assess site depth and the presence or absence of intact cultural strata and/or feature, and assist in boundary delineation. However, low probability areas (for example, poorly drained soils and steep slopes, generally with a grade greater than 15%) and extensively disturbed (for example, previously subjected to land-leveling, clearing and grubbing activities, and other similar earthmoving activities) non-floodplain areas need only be subjected to visual inspection. If the visual survey locates natural benches, quarries, or other cultural features, the visual testing is to be augmented with additional, selectively or judgmentally placed, STPs.

Surface Collection

At the survey level, a complete surface artifact collection should not normally be made unless the site contains few artifacts or shows evidence of previous and/or active looting or vandalism. If a surface collection is made, an appropriate sampling method should be utilized and based on the investigator's assessment of field conditions as well as the type and density of artifacts present. An investigator's collection strategy should be specified in field notes, for example: all diagnostics and a representative sample of other observable materials, or controlled and repeatable samples of every surface artifact in designated locations, or a minimum number of each type of historic ceramic and glass plus other diagnostic items, etc. Surface collection is not a valid survey strategy on sites where ground visibility is less than 50%.

Surface visibility and topography alone do not sufficiently define a site. Although a surface collection may help to define horizontal site limits, it should be supplemented with more traditional subsurface testing, particularly when surface visibility is discontinuous or variable. Subsurface testing also provides information about stratigraphy, the vertical distribution of material, and site integrity which cannot be obtained from pedestrian survey data alone.

Subsurface Survey

Although a surface collection may help to define horizontal site limits, it must be supplemented with subsurface testing, particularly when surface visibility is discontinuous or variable. Subsurface testing also provides information about stratigraphy, the vertical distribution of material, and site integrity, which cannot be obtained from visual survey alone and is necessary to establish the extent of a site even when surface visibility is unrestricted, and topographic changes indicate a possible boundary. Excavation of STPs (Shovel Test Pits, square in profile and not smaller than 12 inches [30 cm] in width) remains one of the most reliable means of site identification in areas of low surface visibility. Whenever possible, STPs are to be tied to a known datum or fixed reference point, with their location clearly marked on appropriate maps.

As a general rule, STPs are to be excavated at intervals no greater than 30 m and will continue to culturally sterile subsoil, if possible. Thirty-meter interval shovel tests can be used to establish the general boundaries, with two consecutive negative shovel tests establishing the edge of the site. Thus, the interval between two distinct sites will be at least 60 m (197 ft.).

Different site types, as well as soils and topography, may justify differing STP intervals. A shorter/tighter interval is recommended if small, low-density sites are encountered. Shorter intervals may be utilized after consultation with and approval from MDAH archaeology staff. The standard 30-m interval for STPs may also be augmented by judgmental testing in high probability areas such as promising landforms or areas containing vegetation or cultural landscape features associated with known or suspected sites locations.

Archaeological site boundaries are to be established by excavating radial shovel tests in no less than four directions. When these resources are identified, it is recommended that the consultant implement a close-interval (5-10 m [16-33 ft.]) shovel-testing strategy to delineate both the horizontal and vertical boundaries of the resources within the survey area. Close interval shovel testing should be continued within the survey area until two sequential negative tests are completed. This may be achieved through the use of a cruciform delineation (i.e. in all four directions from a site datum) or grid strategy as long as the spacing of between 5 and 10 m is maintained to establish site boundaries. Additionally, 5-10 m intervals should be excavated to determine whether individual artifacts recovered from lone or single STPs with no adjacent positive STPs represent isolated finds or small low-density sites.

All soils from STPs must be screened through ¼-inch hardware cloth. All artifacts fifty years of age and over are to be retained with the exception of materials such as brick, shell, charcoal, etc., which may be quantified in the field, a sample retained, and the remainder discarded. Shovel tests are to be excavated to a depth of at least 70 to 80 cmbs (centimeters below surface) (2.3 to 2.6 ft.) or until impenetrable substrate (i.e., bedrock or clay), known culturally sterile subsoil, or the water table is reached (see *6.4. Special Environment Surveys*). If excavation exceeds this depth, an auger or Oakfield soil probe should be employed from the base of shovel test excavation to a maximum depth of 120 cmbs (3.94 ft.).

Notes on all STPs and trenches will be recorded and are to include information on survey/site/transect identification and location, with a representative profile drawing or detailed description of strata, soil types, Munsell descriptions, depth measurements, and a listing of artifacts (both kept and discarded). Note the environmental conditions under which any testing strategy was employed (for example, adverse weather, condition of ground surface, etc.). A detailed map is to be prepared showing areas surveyed, areas eliminated from survey due to disturbance, slope, wetness, etc., and the location of the positive and negative STPs.

Remote Sensing

Remote sensing should be used to augment more traditional survey methods by identifying high potential areas for subsurface testing. Remote sensing (using metal detectors, proton magnetometers, ground penetrating radar, etc.) is recommended for sites associated with the Contact Period or Civil War, and is particularly useful for identifying burials. In underwater survey, remote sensing is often effective in identifying targets for later diver verification. A specific case is to be made in the research design for the use of remote sensing and its relationship to other survey methods made explicit.

Four geophysical techniques are principally employed in archaeology: magnetometry, electrical resistivity, electromagnetic conductivity (EM), and ground-penetrating radar (GPR). For a discussion of each approach, their suitability in various environments, and the latest advances in the field of geophysical methods (see *Geophysical Surveys as Landscape Archaeology* by Kenneth L. Kvamme).

Ruler 12.6.4. Special Environment Surveys

Deep Sediments

If colluvial, alluvial, or aeolian deposits are known to be present in the survey area from background research or by field inspection, testing will be needed to identify buried sites or the potential for such sites. This may be accomplished through a combination of methods such as coring, hand excavation of deep shovel tests, or mechanical slit trenching. The choice of technique will depend upon the depth of the deposits. If limited to shovel test excavations exceeding 70 to 80 cmbs in depth, an auger or Oakfield soil probe should be employed from the base of shovel test excavation to a maximum depth of 120 cmbs (3.9 ft.). MDAH strongly recommends that deep testing be performed on all parcels of alluvial or colluvial soil within the project area, especially for projects with deep vertical impacts. If full-scale systematic testing of the project area is not feasible, a geomorphologist is to be employed to develop a sampling program that identifies soils suitable for the preservation or formation of cultural deposits.

When deep testing is accomplished by the use of mechanical equipment, care must be taken to avoid excessive damage to fragile archaeological sites. Slit trenching with heavy equipment such as a backhoe (preferably toothless) is to be used in situations where deep sediments cannot be reached through hand excavation. Trenches are to be placed in a manner suitable to

reconstruct the past and present landforms. For large continuous sections of terrain, the testing is to be adequate to reconstruct the alluvial history of the floodplain. The excavations are to continue until a depositional environment not favorable for formation or preservation of cultural horizons is found. In special circumstances where the terrain limits the access of heavy equipment and hand excavation is not feasible, coring or auguring may be implemented. The soils from the cores are to be extracted in a controlled manner and sifted when appropriate.

After excavation, the trench profile will be troweled to inspect for stratigraphy and cultural features. A detailed profile drawing and description shall be completed. If a geomorphologist is used, he or she is to assist in the placement of trenches, evaluation, and interpretation of the excavation profiles. The evaluation may include tests for soil type and texture, standardized color descriptions, and grain size distributions. The geomorphologist will submit a detailed interpretive analysis on the deep testing that will be included as an appendix to the full technical report of investigations. This analysis will address the issues of site depositional processes, their effects on archaeological preservation, visibility of archaeological sites, and landform evolution over time. A summary and discussion of the results should be presented in the body of the technical report.

In most cases it will not be possible to determine if buried cultural artifacts are present simply by visual inspection of the profile alone. Therefore, hand excavation will be required. Preferably, a three-foot-square test unit will be excavated at the margin of each backhoe trench where favorable soil horizons have been identified. The test unit will be excavated in a series of arbitrary and/or natural stratigraphic levels until soil horizons not favorable to the formation or preservation of cultural horizons have been identified. All soil will be sifted through ¼-inch mesh hardware cloth and the artifacts retained according to level. As conditions dictate, alternate sampling strategies may be implemented to evaluate the integrity, age, and cultural period of the soil profile. For example, in consultation with the geomorphologist, recent fill layers or very recent alluvium may be removed without sifting. However, the researcher must justify that the sampling strategy is satisfactory to identify historic resources that may be present. In addition, if cultural material is encountered during deep testing and a geomorphologist is not already employed, arrangements are to be made to use a geomorphologist in an evaluation of all the trenches.

Urban Sites

An urban property is defined as any lot within the boundaries of a platted city block within an incorporated city, village, or town. Investigators are strongly encouraged to discuss urban survey strategies with MDAH as the research proposal is developed. Deviations from these standards can be agreed upon prior to beginning fieldwork and described in the report. Any deviations developed in the field, and their rationale, must be described in the report.

Prior documentary research is critical because the spatial limits of urban archaeological deposits often cannot be defined in the same manner as the boundaries of non-urban sites. Such research

may aid in determining the historical boundaries of streets, blocks, house lots, etc. Given the unique nature of these settings, the typical 30-m grid system nor traditional site delineation techniques are sufficient for defining site boundaries.

Each lot is considered by MDAH to be a separated entity, inherently defined by its legal boundary. Therefore the typical approach of two negative shovel tests defining the edge of an archaeological site is not required nor necessarily applicable. Consequently, the definition of the site boundary should be restricted to the current or historic, legally-defined limits of the lot. This can be depicted through historic Sanborn maps, city maps, historic and modern aerial photographs, physical separation of lots from neighbors through the use of fences and plantings along lot lines, etc. Each urban lot should be subjected to survey to see if archaeological deposits are present. (For further information about urban sites and developing boundaries for urban districts please see NRHP Bulletin #21). In general, identification efforts in an urban area are to include:

1. STPs excavated at 10m (33 ft.) intervals on transects spaced no further than 10m apart;
2. All STPs should be square in profile, at least 30 cm (~1.0 ft.) in width, and be excavated to sterile subsoil or a minimum depth of 80 cm (2.6 ft.);
3. Identification of the presence, distribution, and preservation of architectural evidence, site stratigraphy, features, and assessment of site significance based upon all available documentary evidence. Previous work at urban sites regionally indicates it is useful to target mid-lot and backlot areas for cellars, privies, wells and cisterns;
4. Recordation and assessment of features containing large numbers of artifacts;
5. The use of metal detectors is encouraged along 1.5-m (~5.0 ft.) lanes along transects spaced no more than 10 m apart;
6. Sampling strategies for artifact recovery. Sampling strategies are to be addressed on an individual basis and the method chosen justified in the research design;
7. Recordation of excavation procedures including drawings and photographs; and
8. Geophysics may be used on vacant lots where traditional survey methods can be employed (i.e. paved lots, etc.).

In cases where the above techniques are not applicable, please consult MDAH about alternative survey strategies/methods.

Military Sites

Conventional survey employing shovel testing at military sites has consistently proven to be unsuccessful in identifying these types of sites across the Southeast. Military sites such as encampments and battlefields are to be considered sensitive resources as many contain unmarked burials. Surveys in areas having potential for military sites need to be sensitive to the following:

1. A thorough visual observation of the ground surface needs to be conducted to identify surface features (huts, chimney falls, latrines, etc.), broad scatters and/or clusters of

building materials, and evidence of relic hunting. This is especially needed for transect surveys where it is likely that only a portion of the site is contained in the project area;

2. Areas of steep slopes (>15%), sometimes excluded from survey, need to be examined as slopes are often favored locations for military encampments;
3. Landscape features are key components to military sites and can be recorded as archaeological resources; and
4. Metal detector surveys are recommended because the majority of diagnostic items deposited at military sites are metallic. When implemented, the metal detector survey shall consider relevant factors such as the experience of the metal detector operator(s), the type of metal detector(s), ground cover, intensity of survey coverage, extent of previous relic hunting, and environmental factors.

A system of interpreting battlefield landscapes known as the KOCOA system (explained below) has been adopted by the NPS and endorsed by the American Battlefield Protection Program for the evaluation of historic battlefield environments. It encompasses key landscape features that may have affected or directed the military action in a given location and keeps the evaluator from focusing solely upon archaeological remains or built environment such as earthworks:

K: Key terrain (terrain that must be taken or held to obtain victory);

O: Observation and fields of fire (terrain that permits observation of enemy movements and avenues of approach);

C: Cover/concealment (terrain that provides troops with cover or protection from enemy fire);

O: Obstacles (features that stand in the way of seizing key terrain – these can be natural, such as heavy woods or deep swamp, or man-made such as fencelines, ditches or earthworks); and

A: Avenues of approach (terrain by which the enemy may be approached – this can be anything from an established roadway to an open field).

Underwater Sites

Archaeological testing in underwater settings often involves unusual circumstances. Research designs for underwater Phase I surveys are to be discussed in advance with MDAH. In general, identification efforts in an underwater setting are to include:

1. Placement of exploratory units based on remote sensing results and knowledge of the sunken vessel or submerged cultural remains;
2. Use of mechanized equipment where extensive modern overburden present;
3. Careful examination of air-lifted and water-dredged soil samples. The soil samples must always be screened through mesh or net bagging;
4. Recordation of the excavation procedure to include drawings and photographs if visibility permits; and

5. Compliance with safety standards of nationally recognized diving organizations (PADI, Instructors NAUI, SSI, etc.).

Metal Detection

Research designs and proposed methodologies for metal detecting must be discussed in advance with MDAH staff, and any relevant Federal agencies. Avocationalists should be interviewed regarding their knowledge of the area. Use judgement when involving avocationalists. If looting has and continues to be a strong possibility, then involving avocationalists may not be appropriate. It is suggested that devices be recent models and professional grade, as technology is always improving.

1. Coverage: When required during Phase I, metal detector coverage should be systematic along 1.5 meter lanes on transects at a maximum 30 meter interval, though closer or even overlapping coverage may be necessary to meet specific research objectives; and removal of ground vegetation and/or leaf litter along detection lanes may be needed for metal detecting to be effective.
2. Reporting: Equipment, personnel, and time spent should be clearly stated in the methods section. Coverage, mapping, and artifact collection strategies should likewise be clearly stated.
3. Personnel Experience: Although recommended, no specific metal detecting training course is required. Preferred qualifications:
 - a. Principal Investigators/Field Directors: have at least 100 hours hands-on field experience and/or equivalent training with remote sensing applications, when those applications are the primary focus of the archaeological investigation; and
 - b. Other investigative personnel: the skills of all other investigative personnel must be appropriate to the requested task(s), the nature of the project, and to the goals and specifications delineated in the research design.

Rule 12.6.5. Phase I Field Documentation Standards

The choice of methods for recording Phase I survey field data are to be based on a research design and enable independent interpretation and recordation. At a minimum, the following information shall be recorded:

STP documentation is to include the following:

1. Identifier;
2. Name of excavator;
3. Date;
4. Description of cultural material;
5. Soils;
6. Profile; and

7. UTM coordinates (for both positive and negative STPs).
- 8.

Project maps are to include the following:

1. Orientation and scale (written and scale bar); and
2. Location of all STPs and all above-ground cultural features, including cultural landscape features and any previously disturbed areas.

Photographs are to be taken of:

1. All site locations;
2. All cultural features/items extant on the surface (for example, mounds, cellar depressions, chimney falls, etc.); and
3. All cultural evidence beneath the surface (for example, hearths, pits, clusters/concentrations of diagnostic artifacts, or significant stratigraphy).

Monitoring, Phase II, and Phase III Mitigation Projects

In compliance with NHPA standards, which consultants should be familiar with, research designs and project completion for all monitoring, Phase II, and Phase III Mitigation projects should contain a public outreach component. This component will include a redacted report for public consumption or a report specifically edited for the general public. It will also include at least one group of printed/web materials that includes things like posters, brochures, lesson plans, coloring pages, webpage, podcast, YouTube video, etc. for the general public. This component will be turned in to MDAH with the final report and archaeological site cards.

Oral History Interviews

Formal Interviews:

Should be conducted whenever possible, especially for 20th century sites, for sites whose occupants may still have living descendants in the area, that are associated with identified living community traditions, or with strong community involvement (like TCPs or Mound Bayou, MS). Oral histories recorded should include information about the location and time of the interview as well as the interviewer and interviewee. A digital recording along with a transcript of the interview should be turned in along with the report to MDAH. This recording should be on archival materials (archival CD). The interviewer shall adhere to the professional qualifications used by the NRHP for Professional Qualifications: Ethnography (Bulletin 38, Appendix II Professional Qualifications: Ethnography).

When seeking assistance in the identification, evaluation, and management of traditional cultural properties, agencies should normally seek out specialists with ethnographic research training, typically including, but not necessarily limited to:

1. Language skills: it is usually extremely important to talk in their own language with those who may ascribe value to traditional cultural properties. While ethnographic fieldwork can be done through interpreters, ability in the local language is always preferable.
2. Interview skills, for example:
 - a. The ability to approach a potential informant in his or her own cultural environment, explain and if necessary defend one's research, conduct an interview and minimize disruption, elicit required information, and disengage from the interview in an appropriate manner so that further interviews are welcome; and
 - b. The ability to create and conduct those types of interviews that are appropriate to the study being carried out, ensuring that the questions asked are meaningful to those being interviewed, and that answers are correctly understood through the use of such techniques as translating and back-translating. Types of interviews normally carried out by ethnographers, one or more of which may be appropriate during evaluation and documentation of a traditional cultural property, include:
 - i. semi-structured interview on a broad topic;
 - ii. semi-structured interview on a narrow topic;
 - iii. structured interview on a well defined specific topic; open ended life history/life cycle interview; and
 - iv. genealogical interview

Skill in making and accurately recording direct observations of human behavior, typically including:

1. The ability to observe and record individual and group behavior in such a way as to discern meaningful patterns; and
2. The ability to observe and record the physical environment in which behavior takes place, via photography, mapmaking, and written description.

Skill in recording, coding, and retrieving pertinent data derived from analysis of textual materials, archives, direct observation, and interviews. Proficiency in such skills is usually obtained through graduate and post-graduate training and supervised experience in cultural anthropology and related disciplines, such as folklore/folklife.

Informal Interviews:

This includes things like landowner information, local informants, and anyone else that you may run into while doing fieldwork. These conversations should have a minimum of the full name of the informant, date(s) talked to, and contact information (phone number/email address) recorded for each conversation.

Rule 12.6.6. Phase II Testing and Evaluation

Phase II projects involve the testing of previously identified archaeological sites for their

eligibility to the National Register of Historic Places (NRHP). This level of investigation may include controlled surface collections, intensive shovel testing, test units, strip blocks, and other appropriate methods for the determination of the extent and nature of archaeological deposits at the site or sites. Again, due to the highly variable nature of each site, this office will not issue a set of general specifications for number of test units or other requirements. The end result of a Phase II project should include, at a minimum, recommendations concerning the eligibility of the site to the NRHP, and firm identification of site boundaries within the project APE. If the site is recommended eligible by the consultant, Phase II investigations should yield recommendations for potential modifications of the project that might avoid impact to the site. Phase II testing reports **SHOULD NOT** include proposed data recovery plans and research designs. In accordance with 36 CFR 800, data recovery excavation is an ADVERSE EFFECT to historic properties. All avenues of avoidance must be exhausted prior to consideration of Phase III data recovery excavation.

Goals of Investigation

Phase II investigation evaluates the National Register significance of the site through more extensive excavation, which samples and characterizes archaeological deposits. The investigation provides an understanding of the horizontal structure and its stratigraphy including artifact and feature distribution; indicates the site's physical integrity, noting any areas of disturbance; establishes the period(s) of occupation, function, cultural affiliation, and associated contexts; and more closely defines the horizontal and vertical boundaries of the site within the APE. More precise boundary definition may be particularly important in some locations as design examines alternatives to avoid the site. The investigation determines if the site can address significant questions associated with the associated contexts. It provides sufficient data to prepare a Phase III research design addressing those questions. Sufficient comparative research is necessary to determine the site's importance in relation to others of its period, cultural affiliation, function, and region.

Depending on site content, an individual qualified under 36 CFR 61 as a prehistoric or historic archaeologist will direct field investigation, research and data analysis, and report preparation. In Phase II, other consulting professionals may also be needed, for example geomorphologists, industrial archaeologists, and faunal specialist, etc. The principal investigator directs all phases of investigation and is present during field testing sufficiently to ensure appropriate field investigation strategies are properly completed, field records including mapping and stratigraphic sections are adequate, sampling is performed appropriately, and artifacts are properly labeled and transported. Field analyses and interpretation of strata and features and their relationship with associated remains are performed by the principal investigator as the investigations proceed. The proposal for Phase II investigations includes a discussion of the necessary professional input and will be submitted and approved by MDAH prior to the initiation of fieldwork.

Environmental Research

The site specific research of Phase II may require additional environmental research to explore the research potential of the site. For example, Phase II investigations may require a discussion of the environmental context contemporary with the site's occupations. Include an environmental context for the site drawn from previous and ongoing research.

Background Research

During Phase II, background research for both prehistoric and historic period sites provides a well-developed cultural contexts defined by theme, period, and physiographic region. In the Phase II level-of-effort research should focus on comparative investigations of known periods of occupation, parallel resource utilization, and similar site type in this area. Such research examines the ways in which the subject site fits into the contemporary regional site distribution and/or environmental and resource needs. The goal of such research is to understand the components of the subject site and address site significance.

Thus, such research defines the site type, its role, and associated cultural context. Examination of previous work at known sites of a similar type within the region establishes the data types and site structure that may be anticipated at the site under examination. The context may provide an understanding of the ways in which the site may have related to others of the same period and cultural association. Knowledge of the context and site type provides the background or comparative overview for interpretation of findings at the subject site and allows the researcher to identify areas needing further investigation within each context and frame potential research questions. It thus permits evaluation of site significance by establishing the major research questions that the site can address. Comparative research also establishes the rarity of the site type, the representativeness of the subject site, and the level of integrity of similar sites.

Site-specific and contextual/site type research involving both prehistoric and historical archaeological site investigation includes intensive interviews with local informants and state and regional authorities in the area of research and region. It involves a review of published and unpublished site reports at MDAH and other repositories in the state (e.g. University collections) that examine relevant contexts, site types, and specific aspects of the site to permit its evaluation. For example, such topics may relate to specific artifact types and other forms of data that may be characteristic of the subject site type, building or structure forms, diet, settlement distribution by land form, etc. Particularly for sites related to prehistoric occupation, locate and assess the importance of artifact collections related to the site and comparative collections related to the site type and/or specific artifact types and materials of particular interest at the site. The former is needed to more fully understand the contents of the site and the later contributes to the comparative analysis and is examined at this phase to frame research questions and prepare a research design if needed.

When examining historical archaeological sites and associated aboveground remains, also complete sufficient research specific to the site and its immediate community and delineate the relevant context(s) and site types to establish site significance. Again, examine relevant

archaeological reports, MDAH files, and other professional sources that deal with the site type and its context(s). Locate comparable archaeological sites and standing buildings and structures and their remains that relate to the site type in the region to understand materials, construction techniques, size and form, technology, design, and functions common to the site type. Field examination of comparable standing properties in the locale in Phase II or III may address issues excluded from available records. If not completed, finish the examination of relevant property records and plats, death and marriage records, census data, directories, local newspapers, building permits, town records, institutional records, and similar records in town, city, and state repositories. While much of this research should precede field investigations, Phase II investigations can frequently point to additional areas of research and ways of analyzing materials either in this phase or in Phase III. Such research is an interactive process.

Thus, this broader study for both prehistoric and historic sites determines the existing level of knowledge about the site type and its context(s), the known levels of integrity of comparable sites within the site type and the existence of comparative collections, and the capacity of the site to investigate significant questions.

Field Investigations

Investigations in Phase II examine the portion of the site within the APE, clearly defining site boundaries within and immediately adjacent this area. These investigations must be sufficient to determine whether the site is eligible for the National Register, or if the portion being tested contributes to the site's eligibility. If significant, the effort must also determine if the nature of the data are of such importance that the site should be preserved for future investigations. If data recovery is appropriate, then the Phase II data must be sufficient to permit the preparation of research questions specific to the site type and each context it represents that are addressed through data recovery. Phase II testing also considers whether the most significant portion of the site extends outside the APE and would not be impacted according to the existing design. This effort may or may not be concluded with further testing outside the APE. Such extensions of investigations should be discussed both with MDAH, the lead federal agency/agencies, consulting federally-recognized Tribes, and other participating parties. If this testing cannot be completed under the current proposal, then the principal investigator will need to consult MDAH for an amendment.

Phase II investigations open larger, more contiguous areas of the site to define the nature and integrity of the archaeological deposits, test and analyze selected features, and locate others found during research. Investigations are sufficient to document the significance of the site. Phase II testing usually involves a combination of close interval shovel testing with 1-X-1 m or larger excavation units, potentially extended by other forms of testing such as remote sensing. The placement of units depends on the nature and distribution of deposits. Shovel-testing at 5-m (16.4 ft.) intervals across the site area more closely defines the locations of artifact clustering and overall distribution, feature distribution, and previously approximated boundaries and delineates

the stratigraphy across the site. The hand excavation of 1-X-1 units and 1-X-2 or more meter trenches investigates the range of artifact types, numbers, and proportion of types, samples features, and defines the stratigraphy. It examines vertical site boundaries and site structure. While systematic arrays of shovel tests play an important role in locating features and defining stratigraphy at the location of artifact finds, it may not sufficiently characterize features, adequately document complex stratigraphy, or place them in relation to visible remains as the larger units do. The increased artifact sampling through both approaches permits more accurate site characterization including delineation of site components.

Units are excavated in 10 cm arbitrary levels within their strata by troweling or shovel-skimming. Dirt is screened through one-quarter inch mesh and one-eighth inch mesh in features or areas of high artifact concentrations, particularly with small artifacts such as micro-flakes or beads. Separate artifacts by level within their respective unit unless features, cultural deposits, and/or scatters require piece-plotting. Units are excavated into sterile soils. Complete any feature excavation with trowels. Depending on the size and artifact density of features, define, sample, and excavate features sufficiently to identify and characterize them and provide support for Phase III recovery. Their selection is judgmental, based on previous experience with the site type and the features' potential to define eligibility and develop questions to be tested in a potential Phase III. Controlled use of mechanical removal of soil may also be necessary in areas of fill. The depth and soil characteristics of the fill are previously identified, and it is known that the sacrificed layers lack archaeological deposits of National Register significance. If historic artifacts are not retained, then state the reason for their disposal, for example, they existed in areas of clear modern deposition. Both vertical and horizontal controls are maintained. Document all excavation units, providing profiles of at least one wall, plans of artifact concentrations and features and profiles, and photographic coverage. Collect soil, carbon, and other samples appropriate to understanding the site type and context.

Phase II investigations at historic period sites can encounter stratigraphic challenges, a large variety of features, and dense artifact deposits, and often possess associations with standing buildings, structures, and ruins, circumstances, with some notable exceptions, not usually found at prehistoric sites. The excavation strategy is often affected by these factors as well as information provided from historical research. Phase II at least partially defines the extent of foundation and other walls and their relationship to each other and to the surrounding strata; gain a sense of the interior strata and their associated deposits in building foundations; and begin to address the nature of the surrounding landscape or setting to understand the extent and complexity of the site. Sheet middens, as well as discrete trash deposits, should be examined in relationship to the physical and historical context in which they are located. Phase II field investigations at historic sites should sample sheet middens, excavated in 10 cm levels within strata, particularly in relationship to the buildings and their openings. This stratigraphic control is intended to identify the existence of chronological layering of deposits.

Functionally and temporally-related aboveground components of historical archaeological sites

may enhance an understanding of the overall property. For buildings, structures, and their extant remains that contextually relate to site deposits, include the following data: date of construction, relevant history of ownership, location on a project maps, photographic views of all elevations, setting, and temporal and/or functional association. Also develop a relatively detailed description including the structural system and exterior cladding materials; the way in which these materials were processed and the techniques of construction; a sketch of the building form with exterior measurements; number of stories; roof shape; orientation of front elevation to roof gable; location, size, and material of the chimneys; exterior building measurements; window and door placement and symmetry to the walls; decorative detailing; relationship to and identification of related buildings, structures, and landscape elements; relationship to buried components and to any associated visible machinery or power source as may be the case with an industrial or agricultural building; and interpretation of function if possible. Depending on the extent of buildings and building remains, the principal investigator may need to include an architectural historian versed in the region's architectural styles, building materials, and building techniques for the investigation. Because the focus of the study is likely to be the analysis of the floor plan, room/building functions, and the relationships between buildings and landscape features and archaeological remains, as well as the building's decorative detailing, which may be quite limited, a background in vernacular architecture may be needed.

Historic sites can possess deep, rich, temporally homogeneous middens, as well as deep, recent fill. In these instances, excavation by stratigraphic levels greater than 10 cm may expedite excavation without sacrificing significant vertical control. Excavation by stratigraphic level may also be necessary in areas of intricate stratigraphy. Carefully document the use of and reason for this method. As explained above, sheet middens are tested in 10 cm levels within strata. This excavation strategy carefully documents the extent of each stratum and its interrelationship with other strata, features, building remains, and artifact deposition. The approach can enhance the understanding the horizontal distribution of features, structural remains, sheet middens, and other deposits in relation to each other and standing buildings and landscapes within the same stratum. This horizontal analysis of site stratigraphy is often critical to the identification of remains of each time period represented at the site.

Data Analysis

As research proceeds, it is understood that the direction of data analysis may alter because of unanticipated data. By this stage of study, it is incumbent on the principal investigator to pursue the data analysis that best reflects the data and the context(s) to which the resources relate even though such an analysis may deviate from his/her general research interests. Another course would sacrifice increasingly scarce, nonrenewable resources.

In Phase II, analyze the site's vertical and horizontal structure, including the soil stratigraphy across the site and the relationship of the strata to site components and their associated structural remains, features, and artifacts. Complete the basic counts of artifact categories by strata and

horizontal division, for example by grid unit and/or feature, permitting the identification of artifact concentrations within them to understand the ways in which the site was used. Examine diagnostic artifacts to verify cultural affiliations and date site components. Conduct the radiometric dating of prehistoric components as well as the preliminary examination of faunal remains, shells, and seeds retrieved during excavation and through flotation. And integrate environmental and documentary data with the results from the analysis of the field data. The inclusion of catalogue sheets alone fails to provide the analytical information required to understand the basic vertical and horizontal distribution of artifacts across the site. The distributional data derived from artifact counts should be summarized in table format and illustrated on site maps, if possible.

The intent of the data analysis is to address two issues: the level of site integrity and whether the data and associated features will augment the understanding of the one or more contexts to which the site relates as well as the development of the site itself. To address the first issue, the field investigations and analyses need to indicate whether materials associated with each component are or can be separate from the others and whether the horizontal distribution of features and artifacts potentially reflect variation in uses or time period of occupation across the site or later disturbance. It is also important to establish the integrity of the site relative to others through which the same questions may be addressed. The second issue examines whether the investigation of artifacts and their associated strata and features address such significant questions ranging from the structural characterization of the site type, the understanding of early building form, the use of technology, and commercial relationships to questions about diet, social status, and the roles of household members. Integrate site-specific and context data and applicable interpretations drawn in Phase I with the results of Phase II investigations. Reanalysis of these initial data in light of Phase II findings may be necessary. All artifacts returned to the laboratory are cataloged, and the catalogue is placed in the report's appendix.

Rule 12.6.7. Phase III Data Recovery/Mitigation

If project plans cannot avoid impact to an NRHP-eligible archaeological site, it may be determined that the resulting Adverse Effect can be addressed through data recovery excavation. Data recovery is intended to remove and record the archaeological information at a site or sites. Because of the unique or nearly unique nature of each archaeological site, requirements for data recovery will be determined through a process of consultation between the appropriate federal agency, the SHPO, federally-recognized Tribes, and supporting state agencies.

Research Design

Phase III data recovery is a full-scale investigation of the portion of the site affected by the project. These investigations are delineated through a research design on the basis of Phase II data. The research design specifies the research questions, expected explanations from comparative research, the associated methods of field and archival investigations and analysis, connecting arguments, and public outreach that is subject to review and approval by MDAH, the

appropriate federal agency/agencies, federally-recognized Tribes, and supporting state agencies. These investigations maximize the recovery of significant data available at the site, not the specific research interests of the principal investigator. The research design and public education elements are formally incorporated into a Memorandum of Agreement (see 36 CFR 800.66C) between the federal agency/agencies, federally-recognized Tribes, supporting state agencies, and, if requested, the Advisory Council, who are signatories, and others with a role in the MOA who participate as concurring parties. Although Phase III focuses investigations through the research design, it incorporates the standard steps of environmental study, research, field investigation, and data analysis into the study.

Phase II work is intended to be sufficiently thorough to determine the quantity and quality of data contained within the affected portion of the site. However, sampling does not always provide an accurate reflection of these elements. As a result, Phase III excavation may not locate the kinds of data necessary to address all the questions posed in the research design, and unanticipated data may provide material for other research questions. When ongoing excavations encounter this situation, the principal investigator should immediately notify MDAH, federal agency, federally-recognized Tribes, and supporting state agencies about necessary modification(s) of the research design.

As noted for previous phases, a principle investigator with 36 CFR 61 qualifications in the appropriate areas of specialization for the site under investigation must closely supervise research, field investigations, data analysis, and report preparation. Phase III data recovery often involves consultants with specialized training. List the types of specialists, their training, and their role in the proposal for the Phase III investigations.

Environmental Context

Review the environmental factors relevant to understanding the cultural context(s) associated with the site, its location, and the research questions. If the context has not been adequately addressed in Phase II, finish the necessary investigations. A detailed statement of the environmental context is placed in the Phase III report. The following types of information should generally be included: geology, glacial history, hydrology, physiography/geomorphology, soils, climate, flora, and fauna and the ways in which the ecology of the area has altered through time, focusing on the period of site occupation. Also describe the past and current land use/landscaping patterns and describe the existing cultural landscape/setting, identifying past and recent modifications as they relate to the significance and condition of the site under examination.

Site Specific and Contextual Research

Research depends in part on the research questions addressed by Phase III investigations. The Phase III report includes a concise description of the cultural contexts, relevant site types, and site specific information related to the site under investigation and its setting. Also incorporate

data relevant to the subject site gained from Phase I and II reports completed for the project. It is through the comparative and contextual research that data from the site are given broader meaning and through it the site achieves its significance. Thus, this information is critical to the Phase III report.

The current status of research as it applies to the research questions should be summarized in the research design and provided in detail in the Phase III report. Phase III investigations include a comprehensive review of the comparable sites, including published and unpublished reports; in some cases, continued interviews with local landowners, avocational archaeologists, local and regional archaeologists and specialists; and examination of related collections in public and private ownership that enhance the understanding of the subject site and research questions. Manuscript research may add to the understanding of the site type. For example, contemporaries describing early industrial processes and machinery may permit interpretation of an industrial site. Depending on the nature and significance of the site or site complex, Phase III research in or information from out-of-state repositories may be necessary.

During Phase III investigations at historic sites and within a sufficient time frame to benefit data recovery and artifact analysis, conduct research and the analyses of the materials in relevant detailed records, for example newspapers, federal and state censuses, retail store account books and related records, diaries, detailed institutional and company records, wills and estate inventories, and private archives and public manuscript collections, and photographic collections. This detailed research continues to focus on the associated contexts and related site types, comparable sites in the region, a history of the site's development, and the research questions. This research is presented in the Phase III report.

Field Investigations

The field methods and kind of data sought for data recovery are detailed in the research design. Depending on the site type and the research questions, these investigations sample the range of significant occupations. Investigation goals in Phase III include confirming and carefully documenting site structure vertically and horizontally to understand the interrelationship of the features, strata, and artifacts of each component and determining their temporal and contextual relationship as well as addressing the research questions.

Excavation in Phase III investigations typically covers a more extensive area. If used for mapping, Phase II maps are field checked. Again the approach to excavation is dictated by the questions, type of occupation, and data being recovered. However, block excavation and trenching are the most common approaches to investigations. Levels are removed by troweling or shovel skimming in 5 to 10 cm intervals within soil strata. Store artifacts by these increments and cross-referenced by provenience. Depending on the size of the artifacts being excavated, screen dirt through one-eighth to one-quarter inch hardware cloth. Some features may require the piece-plotting of artifacts. The mechanical removal of soils is limited to the removal of recent fill and overburden identified as sterile during previous testing. Where environmental

circumstances permit and when intensive excavation has sufficiently sampled the site, mechanical stripping of plowzone may expose additional features within the area of impact, permitting a more extensive investigation. Areas of the site extending beyond the project should be protected from stripping, mapped, and set aside as a protected area. Depending on site content and research design, Phase III likely involves the collection of soil samples for flotation and analysis of botanical and faunal remains, the examination of soil chemistry, and the collection of radiocarbon samples.

As in Phase II investigations of historical archaeological sites, vertical control is usually by strata and 10 cm levels within the strata. Depending on the nature of the artifact deposition, for example artifact-rich middens vs. stratified sheet middens, and the nature of the strata, recovery by strata may be sufficient. At the other end of the spectrum, piece plotting of significant finds may be necessary for other deposits. Include from earlier phases and expand the data documenting associated standing buildings and structures, their visible remains, and associated landscape features. Phase III includes an interior inspection of the building with measured sketches of the floor plan, delineating room size, window and door placement, chimney locations, storage areas, stairs, and other features significant to the study. Room function contemporary with the period under investigation is important to the study, but difficult to address. Areas of the building or structure that have undergone relatively recent modification and hold little information for analysis do not require similar detail. Also photograph representative areas. An architectural historian versed in regional vernacular forms should provide guidance in this area. The analysis of spaces represented in floor plans and site plans documenting landscaping features should be integrated with the belowground data.

Data Analysis

Analysis should examine and integrate the different forms of data collected during data recovery and those of earlier phases that relate to the site under investigation as well as those gained through comparative analysis with parallel sites within the region and other contextual information. The focus of the qualitative and quantitative analyses required to understand the artifact assemblage within its physical context will vary depending on the research questions being addressed, the site type, and the cultural context(s) to which it relates. The analysis typically includes, but is not limited to, the correlation of soil stratigraphy with the horizontal and vertical distribution of artifacts, features, and structural remains within and among the site's components; the dating of strata through radiometric and other methods; the study of the soil composition and an understanding of the past environmental contexts of the site and the significance of these variables; detailed lithic and ceramic analyses; low and high magnification use-wear analysis; detailed botanical and faunal analyses; detailed analyses of specific artifact types often involving the examination of other sources including other related site collections; comparative document and artifact research examining the technological production of classes of artifacts; and the interpretation of building remains through the examination of functionally and structurally comparable building forms as well as the associated archaeological evidence.

Although the research design specifies how the analysis proceeds, unanticipated data should also receive consideration and some anticipated data may not be recovered. Again, changes in analytical strategy are confirmed with the federal agency, the SHPO, federally-recognized Tribes, and supporting state agencies and explained in the report in the statement of method.

All recovered artifacts are catalogued. Because of the large number of artifacts associated with some types of Native American and many historic sites, the principal investigator in conference with the federal agency, the SHPO, federally-recognized Tribes, and supporting state agencies may need to address which portions of the assemblage are retained. Retention includes collection sufficient to permit its reanalysis to examine the research questions of the data recovery project from a different perspective and pursue other questions and types analyses at a later date. The method of and reasons for the artifact selection and the discussions about it are documented in the Phase III report.

Rule 12.7.0. Archaeological Site Cards

Rule 12.7.1. Acquiring Site Numbers (Trinomials)

To obtain Mississippi State Site Numbers (trinomials), site cards must be submitted to MDAH on appropriate card stock. Electronic versions of our site cards may be submitted for the purpose of being assigned a trinomial, but a site card will not be considered final until a hard copy has been submitted.

Please allow up to thirty (30) days to receive trinomials. Large submissions (20 or more) may require more time to process.

When your submissions are reviewed, you will receive an email with trinomials or comments requesting clarification or more information (please be aware that incomplete or inaccurate site cards will require editing/correcting prior to issuance of trinomials). Please submit corrections within 30 days.

The link for procedures and guidance for site card submission can be found here:

<http://www.mdah.ms.gov/new/wp-content/uploads/2013/06/Site-Cards-Checklist.pdf>

(placeholder)

Submitting final site cards

When you receive your trinomials, you will receive an email with an attached .pdf of the final site card. Please print the forms on 120 lb. white acid free cardstock and submit them with your report.

Source: 36CFR 61.4(b)(2).

Rule 12.7.2. Recording Archaeological Sites

Definition of a site

Please refer to Section 5.1. Archaeological Site.

Newly discovered sites

If an archaeological site is identified during a Phase I survey, state site numbers (trinomials) must be obtained **prior** to the submission of the report **and** sites must be identified by these assigned numbers in the report.

Site updates/revisits

All previously recorded sites directly within the project APE must be visited and assessed to evaluate, assess, and document changes in site condition, National Register eligibility (if known), identified components, and other site characteristics. Updated site cards must be submitted for previously discovered sites. Phase II and Phase III investigations must include an updated site card prior to the final report submission.

Terminated projects

Section 106 review, including assessments of historic and archaeological resources, typically begins at a project's planning stage. On occasion, the project is cancelled before these reviews are completed, leaving the documentation of the archaeological work in limbo and the materials not analyzed or curated.

Section 112(a)(2) of the National Historic Preservation Act requires the federal agency to ensure that all collections and associated records (including site forms and the project report) for any Section 106 project to be curated. This section and the accompanying 36CFR800 regulations obligate the agency/company contracting the archaeological investigation to provide sufficient funding to complete the report and curation for the investigations conducted to date.

It does not obligate the agency/company to undertake any further proposed and/or planned archaeological investigations within the project area beyond those completed at the time the project is cancelled.

MDAH expects the individual or firm contracting the archaeological work to ensure their contract provides for the results of any archaeological work undertaken up to the time the project is cancelled will be reported on and curated. This must include completion of all new and updated site forms, preparation of a report describing the work undertaken, and curation of all collected materials and associated records.

Rule 12.7.3. Guide to the Mississippi Archaeological Site Card

As state trinomials are required for final reports, site cards should be submitted for review and trinomial assignation prior to report submission. The final site card should be submitted with the report with the assigned trinomial inserted into the correct fields on the final card. We require detailed National Register of Historic Places (NRHP) eligibility justifications for every individual site in order to fulfill our responsibilities as the State Historic Preservation Office (SHPO) pursuant to the National Historic Preservation Act of 1966, as amended (16 U.S.C. 470).

MDAH requires use of the NAD27 datum for the UTM coordinates. Make sure that your plotted location and the UTM's match; failure to do will result in non-acceptance.

[SITE NAME]: Fill in with the official site name. This includes previously assigned site names or historic names of the property (not the name of the landowner). If this is a new site you decide on the site name. [Please note MDAH has the right to censor or edit inappropriate site names]

[SITE NO.]: This field is left blank on the initial submittal for review. After assigned, it should be filled with the number supplied by MDAH for FINAL submission.

The state trinomial consists of three things:

1. The state number (22)
2. County abbreviation for the county where the site was found (see below list of counties and abbreviations).
3. The number assigned to that specific site within that county. This is left blank on the initial card (before the number is assigned by MDAH). This field should be filled in when you turn in the FINAL site card.

County	Abbreviation
Adams	Ad
Alcorn	Al
Amite	Am
Attala	At
Benton	Be
Bolivar	Bo

County	Abbreviation
Calhoun	Ca
Carroll	Cr
Chickasaw	Cs
Choctaw	Ch
Claiborne	Cb
Clarke	Ck
Clay	Cl
Coahoma	Co
Covington	Cv
Desoto	Ds
Forrest	Fo
Franklin	Fr
George	Ge
Greene	Gn
Grenada	Gr
Hancock	Ha
Harrison	Hr
Hinds	Hi
Holmes	Ho
Humphreys	Hu
Issaquena	Is
Itawamba	It
Jackson	Ja

County	Abbreviation
Jasper	Js
Jefferson	Je
Jefferson Davis	Jd
Jones	Jo
Kemper	Ke
Lafayette	La
Lamar	Lm
Lauderdale	Ld
Lawrence	Lw
Leake	Lk
Lee	Le
Leflore	Lf
Lincoln	Li
Lowndes	Lo
Madison	Md
Marion	Ma
Marshall	Mr
Monroe	Mo
Montgomery	Mt
Neshoba	Ne
Newton	Nw
Noxubee	No
Oktibbeha	Ok

County	Abbreviation
Panola	Pa
Pearl River	Pr
Perry	Pe
Pike	Pi
Pontotoc	Po
Prentiss	Ps
Quitman	Qu
Rankin	Ra
Scott	Sc
Sharkey	Sh
Simpson	Si
Smith	Sm
Stone	St
Sunflower	Su
Tallahatchie	Tl
Tate	Ta
Tippah	Ti
Tishomingo	Ts
Tunica	Tu
Union	Un
Walthall	Wl
Warren	Wr
Washington	Ws

County	Abbreviation
Wayne	Wa
Webster	We
Wilkinson	Wk
Wintson	Wi
Yalobusha	Ya
Yazoo	Yz

[OTHER NOS.]: Put field or temporary site numbers you may use BEFORE receiving state trinomials here.

[MAP REF. OR 7.5' QUAD]:

The name(s) of the USGS 7.5 minute quad map(s) on which the site appears.

[COUNTY]:

Put the county that the site appears in here. If the site is located in multiple counties, it receives a separate trinomial for each county (A site card for EVERY trinomial needs to be turned in, meaning if a site traverse counties, separate site cards should be turned in for each county the site falls within).

[SEC.]: The section(s) in which the site is located on the topographic map. A section is approximately one-square-mile block of land located within a specific township and range. There are 36 sections within a Township and Range.

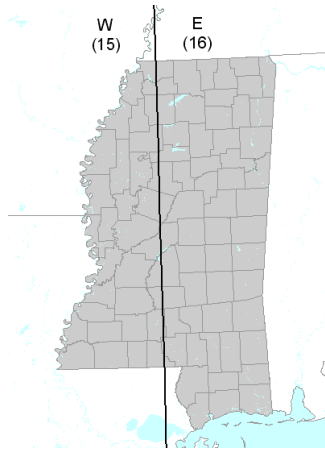
[TWN]: The township in which the site is located. A township is defined as a measure of the distance north or south from a referenced baseline, in units of six miles. Townships run vertically along the topographic map.

[RNG]: The Range in which the site is located. A range is defined as a measure of the distance east or west from a referenced principal meridian, in units of six miles. Ranges run horizontally along the topographic map.

[ZONE]: Locate the site's position within the Universal Transverse Mercator Grid System (UTM) using NAD27 as the datum. Mississippi has two zones (15 and 16). Sites west of

the 90° parallel fall within zone 15, while sites east of the 90° parallel fall within zone 16. If a site falls on the line, pick a side to place the UTM point.

For small sites indicate a center point only, for sites over 40 acres or linear sites (railroads, trails, etc.), enter multiple UTM points. For sites over 40 acres please include at least four UTM points- two on each end of the longest axis and two on the ends of the shortest axis. For linear sites please include an approximate center point and UTM coordinates for each end of the segment recorded (latter coordinates on back of card).



[EASTING]: This is the UTM coordinate for horizontal location or “x” on a Cartesian grid represented by a six digit number.

[NORTHING]: This is the UTM coordinate for vertical location or “y” on a Cartesian grid represented by a seven digit number.

You may also enter the street and address for historic sites (where applicable) in the comment field.

[OWNERSHIP]:

Which agency owns the land on which the site is located? “Unknown” is strongly discouraged as this information should be a part of your background research. If this is a federal project the land owner should be known, “unknown” will not be accepted for federal projects.

[NAME OF OWNER]:

This is for the name of the land owner(s)

[RECORDER]:

The name of the person who is requesting the site number OR who did the field work.

[DATE]:

When was the site identified? (Please state Month/Day/Year). If this is a revisit card, when was your field visit?

[NATIONAL REGISTER POTENTIAL]:

This is for the National Register of Historic Places (NRHP) status as based upon the most current assessment/visit. The provided choices are: Eligible Ineligible Unevaluated

3. This status should be determined by the Principal Investigator (PI) of the project. Justify the eligibility determination. This justification should address all criteria (A-D) of the National Register of Historic Places (NRHP). Keep in mind that while most archaeological sites are eligible under criterion D, sites can be eligible under all criteria (A-D). Sites can also be eligible under multiple criteria.
4. “Potentially Eligible” is strongly discouraged.
5. “Unknown” is a preferable option if the site’s eligibility is not known.

[NATURAL SETTING]:

In what sort of topographic setting does the site occur?

[VEGETATION COVER]:

What is the ground cover at the time of your visit? If you check “other” please specify.

[ESTIMATION OF GROUND COVER]:

How much of the ground is covered (from 0 to 100%)?

[DEGREE OF DISTURBANCE]:

How much disturbance is evident from shovel testing and/or surface exposure observations (from 0 to 100%)

[TYPE OF DISTURBANCE]:

What activities led to the disturbance of the site’s deposits? You may list more than one type of disturbance. If you check “other” please specify.

[SOIL TYPE]:

This is for the soil name as listed by the NRCS (formerly the SCS). This is usually found in the NRCS County Soil Survey-now usually available online (<https://websoilsurvey.sc.egov.usda.gov/App/HomePage.htm>). If no data is available, please list “not available.”

[SOIL CODE]:

This blank is to be filled in with the NRCS soil code.

[ARTIFACT DENSITY]:

How would you rate the amount of artifacts recovered at the site?

1. Categories include: heavy; medium; light; and single artifact.
2. What constitutes each is admittedly highly variable and subjective contingent upon the recorder's understanding; therefore, these range categories must be defined in associated reports or if not associated with a report, in the comment section.

[INSTITUTION WHERE ARTIFACTS CURATED]:

Where will the artifacts be housed upon completion of survey?

1. Preference is for artifacts to be housed in Mississippi.
2. Federal projects require a federally-approved curation facility that meets or exceeds requirements set up by 36CFR79 (curation of federally owned and administered archaeological collections).
3. Leaving collections with the landowner is not preferable but is acceptable only when the lead agency requires it.

[SURFACE AREA]:

What is the total surface area of the site in square meters?

1. This is most often calculated by multiplying the values of the two perpendicular axes.

[MAX LENGTH]:

What is the N-S or longest axis (if it lies on the diagonal) of the site in meters?

[MAX WIDTH]:

What is the E-W or longest axis (if it lies on the diagonal) of the site in meters?

[ELEVATION]:

What is the site's height above mean sea level in feet?

[DEPOSIT DEPTH]:

What is the greatest depth (in meters) at which artifacts were recovered or observed at the site?

[CHRONOLOGY]:

Based upon the artifacts recovered (meaning diagnostics), what cultural periods/occupations or time periods are represented?

[REPORT REFERENCE]:

This can be used for the report title and/or to list other reports that were referenced when filling out the site card.

[MDAH REPORT NO.]:

This is an internally-generated number assigned to the survey report and will be listed for cross-referencing.

[TOPOGRAPHIC MAP EXCERPT]:

Attach a copy of the 7.5 minute quad with the site location depicted.

1. Make sure the location shown on the card is the same shape/orientation as the site
2. Make sure they match the dimensions provided
3. 1:24,000 scale is required
4. If multiple sites are shown on the inset site card map, be sure to clearly indicate which particular site the card is referencing
5. If using pre-printed blank cards to manually fill-out, please attach map with acid free rubber cement or acid free - tape is not acceptable
6. If your UTM point falls outside the area shown on the attached map, then the site card will be returned for correction before a number will be assigned.
7. Section lines can be used as a guide for the area to paste onto the card provided the area fits neatly into the area provided on the card AND clearly indicates the site boundaries.

{ REVERSE SIDE OF CARD }

[MOUNDS-CONICAL-PYRIMIDAL-INDETERMINATE-EARTHWORKS]:

Are there any earthworks present?

1. Which type best describes the earthworks that are present?
2. If the type is unknown, choose "indeterminate" and use the Comments section to further describe the earthworks.

[MATERIAL IDENTIFIED]:

What types/kinds of artifacts were recovered from/documented at the site? Include detailed descriptions and counts.

- a. "Lithic Debitage" is not descriptive enough. Please describe the material, type of debitage (primary, secondary, tertiary, shatter, etc.), retouching, and quantity of each type. For stone tools (ground-stone or worked/utilized), please utilize established type names (see McGahey's Mississippi Point Guide for reference).
- b. Prehistoric ceramics lists should include counts by temper and type and variety, if discernable (presence/absence of surface treatment should be noted).
- c. Historic Ceramics should list (when known) paste, glaze/slip, decoration/pattern (transfer print, shell edge, molding, etc.), color of glaze/underglaze, vessel form, etc.

- d. Historic glass should list (when known) manufacture method, color, function, trademarks, decoration, etc.

Example Prehistoric Assemblage: Material Identified reads as follows: 41 primary tan chert flakes; 10 tan chert flake fragments; 1 Gary, var. Gary point (distal end missing, hinge fracture, red chert); 4 Baytown Plain, var. Unspecified (grog tempered) sherds

Example Historic Assemblage: 6 machine-made cut nails; 12 unidentified manufacture brick fragments (9 grams); 4 fragments (1 vessel) Aqua bottle glass, 2 piece mould-blown, glass label; 3 sherds (1 bowl) black transfer-printed whiteware, floral motif.

For Linear Resources (placement of additional coordinate information):

Historic road pathway and cut with; essentially dirt roadway that has been utilized as a logging/wellpad access road for most of the mid-to-late 20th and 21st centuries; essentially at grade across the crest of the ridge for its duration with no observable associated features.

*Southern end of segment: 243564E 3439450N

*Northern end of segment: 243884E 3441485N

[COMPONENT-DIAGNOSTIC]

Please list the cultural period on the left and the artifact(s) diagnostic of said periods on the right. These artifacts should also be listed in the material identified area as well.

Example Card: Reads as follows:

Gary, var. Gary Point – Late Archaic

Baytown Plain – Woodland

Machine-made Cut Nails – Late 1700's-Early 1900's

Black Transfer-print Whiteware – 1785-1864

Aqua Bottle, 2 pc. Mould-blown, Glass Label -- 1750-1880

For Linear Resources:

Component info: 20th Century. Historic road depicted on historic maps-Marion County Soil Survey Map from 1934; still present on late 20th-century USGS quads (1969)

Diagnostic info: There are no other associated features (e.g. drainage ditches, culverts, bridges, etc.). [When associated features exist, such as a bridge, provide locational coordinates for the center of the associated feature in this location]

[COMMENTS]:

This can be used for a brief site description discussing method of identification and overall nature of the type and condition of the resource, means of discovery (surface subsurface, some combination of the two), shovel test counts and intervals, nature and scale of disturbance(s) if present, etc.

1. Please do NOT copy and paste the entire site description from your survey report in this area.
2. If you elect to use the fillable PDF version of the site card, there is an approximately 500-word count limit in this field.
3. Use this section to describe any extant landscape features (roadways, gardens, family cemeteries, etc.) structures/structural remnants, or building(s).

Example of Typical Card: Comments read as follows:

The mound is now approximately 5 meters high by 25 meters in diameter. It appears to have been affected by farming/plowing activities. The mound shows no evidence of sloughing but has been severely eroded. It is now in the middle of a field and covered in grass. There is no record of it having been excavated in the past. There does appear to be evidence of looting activities in the form of a large round depression in the northwest side of the mound. There were a total of 75 shovel tests dug across the site. 35 of them were positive.

Example of Linear Resource (roads, trails, railroads, canals, telegraph lines, etc.):

This linear resource begins at intersection with Clear Creek Road and proceeds roughly north for a distance of at least approximately 2.03 km (1.26 miles) before becoming too obscured to delineate/clearly demarcate. The route is a simple dirt roadway with no shoulders or drainage ditching throughout its entirety and measures approximately 2.74 m (9 ft.) wide. The earliest depiction of the road is on the 1934 Marion County Mississippi Soil Survey map, which shows nearly the same alignment as today. It is noted on the 1969 and 2012 7.5-minute USGS topos. This roadway has been utilized as local roadway since at least 1934 and has been subjected to maintenance multiple times and likely retains little of the original road-bed material.

Example of Cemetery (needs to include Historic/Common Name if known, years of use, type [such as community, family, religious, etc.], number of graves/markers, orientation of graves, distinctive features [border such as fencing or about the markers themselves]):

This cemetery consists of a total of 3 tombstones. Each reads as follows: Claireborne Huffman Co. B 38 Miss. Cav. C.S.A.; Daniel Sullivan Born Aug. 31, 1828 Died Jan. 6, 1898 Erected by his son A.B. Sullivan; and Dennis Sullivan born about Aug 1790 died after 1870 Married Mary Polly Hayes about 1810 in Georgia. There is an additional stone marker that mentions a nearby house site and the burial of the twelve children of Dennis Sullivan, including Daniel Sullivan. This suggests that there are possible eleven additional burials

nearby. Also the cemetery was fenced in at one point due to a fence post being present. The entire cemetery measures 30 meters (98 feet) x 20 meters (65.6 feet).

Rule 12.7.4. Historic Artifact Analysis: using DAACS cataloging manual descriptions

Beads – Describe the bead(s) with the following: artifact count, completeness, material, manufacturing technique, bead structure, bead form, bead shape, complex shape, kidd and kidd type, bead color, end treatment, heat treated, diaphaneity, mended, decoration, number of facets, post-manufacturing modification, conservation, casing information, decoration (color and description), image, and object

Buckles- Describe the buckle(s) with the following: artifact count, buckle type, completeness, object weight, mended, post-manufacturing modification, conservation, marks, frames, hooks, pins, tongues, marks, buckle frame plating, decorative technique, decorative motif, burned, etc.

Buttons- Describe the button(s) with the following: Artifact count, completeness, material, manufacturing technique, button type, button shape, button color, button metal color, decoration, eye, shank material, shank style, shank condition, button weight, button height, button diameter, button length, button width, button back stamp, decorative technique, jewel/inlay material, decorative technique color, decorative motif, button face material, button face manufacturing technique, button join method, burned, post-manufacturing modification, and conservation.

Ceramics- Describe the ceramic(s) with the following: count, ware, material, manufacturing technique, vessel category, form, completeness, decoration, mended, exterior surface, exterior color, exterior glaze opacity, interior surface, interior color, interior glaze opacity, detached glaze, missing glaze, sherd thickness, maximum sherd measurement, sherd weight, mended sherd weight, rim length, rim diameter, mended rim diameter, base length, base diameter, mended base diameter. Decoration – genre, pattern name, pattern notes, interior/exterior, location, decorative technique, decoration color, stylistic element, motif, etc. Wear/condition- evidence of burning, post-manufacturing modification, wear location, ceramic completeness, wear pattern. Base Mark – base mark, base mark color, base mark reference. Coarse earthenware protocols: Paste color, oxidized vs reduced fabric, paste inclusions. Please refer to DAACS on how to catalog specific ware types including (but not limited to) colonowares, redwares, delftware, faience, wedgewood, creamware, whiteware, pearlware, ironstone, yellow ware, porcelains, and stonewares.

Faunal- All faunal remains/artifacts should include the following: count, reliability, taxon name, element name, symmetry, NISP, weight, location, description, fusion, relative size, sex, chewing type, chewing location, fresh break, identifier, date identified, notes. Teeth should have tooth type and tooth wear. Condition should include disease or trauma, weathered, burned, and condition. Butcher cut and info should include: butcher method, butcher location, butcher direction, number of marks, cut type, cut location, cut direction. Measurements should include a measuring description.

Glass- Glass artifact(s) should include the following: artifact count, color, vessel form, completeness, manufacturing techniques and mold types, mended, decoration, thickness [primarily for windowpane glass], base diameter (if applicable), pontil mark, total height [if intact or nearly intact], shape, manufacturing technique, decoration technique, applied color, stylistic elements, marks, burned, patination, solarization, etc.

Tobacco Pipe- Tobacco pipe(s) should include the following: artifact count, completeness, material, manufacturing technique, paste color, non-plastic paste inclusions, mended, decoration, text mark, glaze type, glaze color, note about burning, stem length, exterior stem diameter, metric bore diameter, 64ths bore diameter, bowl height, maximum bowl diameter, bowl volume, maximum sherd measurement, weight, bowl form, bowl base type mouthpiece form, decorative motif, motif manufacturing method, motif location, mark description, mark specifics, pipe maker, production dates, manufacture location, post-manufacturing modification, conservation, etc.

Utensil- Any utensil artifact(s) recovered should include the following: artifact count, completeness, utensil form, fork-number of tines, mended, decoration, utensil length, utensil width, utensil weight, part, shape, spoon bowl shape, manufacturing technique, material, marks, plating, handle description, burned, post-manufacturing modification, conservation, etc.

All Other Artifacts- These artifacts should include the following: artifact count, category, general artifact form, completeness, flotation samples, mended, decoration, coin dates, material and manufacturing technique, notes, object length, width, height and weight, object diameter, brick size, marks, decoration, burned, post-manufacturing modification, conservation, etc.

Rule 12.8.0. Archaeological Report Guidelines

A summary of the minimum standards for archaeological reports appears below. For in-depth treatment of reporting standards, see Secretary of Interior's Standards and Guidelines, Federal Register, 48:44734-44737; McGimsey and Davis 1977; and Bense et. al. 1986. For matters of style refer to the Style Guide for American Antiquity (2003).

Rule 12.8.1. Management Summaries

Management summaries were developed to allow lead agencies and the MSSHPO to evaluate whether or not the field methods for data recovery followed the initial scope of work and/or research proposal. With increased land development, many private developers now have to comply with various cultural resource regulations, and much of their funding depends on phased bank loans. To accommodate their needs, the MSSHPO will review management summaries for projects on a case-by-case basis. Final project approval, however, still requires submittal and acceptance of a final report. ***There will be a "zero-tolerance" policy in place for contractors that abuse this privilege.***

To ensure timely MSSHPO review, management summaries must include the following:

1. Project Title
2. Agency Requiring Work
3. Agency Project Number(s)
4. Project Location (include a 7.5 minute [1:24,000 scale] USGS topographic map and project planning maps)
5. Field Personnel and Dates of Excavation
6. Brief Statement of Project Goals and Objectives
7. Planned Laboratory and Specialist Analyses
8. Name and Location of Curation Facility
9. Summary of Methodology (include total area excavated and means of excavation [shovel testing, controlled surface collection, excavation units, etc.]
10. Summary of Results – This section must include sufficient information to ensure the MSSHPO and regulatory agencies that the terms of the data recovery or treatment plan will be met. Helpful information includes sampling percentages, representative photographs, feature plans and profiles, and site plans. Unusual finds and possible implications should be noted. Any preliminary analyses are useful to include, as is a discussion and justification of any deviations from the approved treatment plan. Please also include any statements regarding whether additional work is deemed necessary.

Rule 12.8.2. Reports and Distribution

Responsibility for submitting reports to the MSSHPO rests with a project's lead agency or its designee. All reports submitted to the MSSHPO for review should be printed on 8.5" X 11" paper, however, foldout maps are permissible.

One (1) copy of a draft report (two [2] if standing structures are documented) is/are to be submitted for review and must be marked "DRAFT." Draft reports, along with an agency cover letter requesting comment or appropriate Project Review Form, should be forwarded to the MSSHPO at:

Mailing Address:

Mississippi Department of Archives and History
Historic Preservation Division
Attn: Review and Compliance Officer
P.O Box 571
Jackson, MS 39205-0571

Shipping Address (FedEx or USPS only):

Mississippi Department of Archives and History

Historic Preservation Division
Attn: Review and Compliance Officer
100 South State Street
Jackson, MS 39201

Upon receipt, the MSSHPO will review the draft report. Any minor changes will be requested via email. Major changes will be requested via formal letter. The MSSHPO may also require additional copies for outside (peer) review. Outside reviewers are persons who have demonstrated a research interest or expertise that pertains to the report's content.

The MSSHPO requests, when possible, that a GIS shapefile (.shp) and all accompanying data files (e.g., .sbn, .dbf, .prj, .sbx, and .shx) be submitted for project area boundaries and resource locations with all submitted reports. This information can be obtained by the use of hand held Global Position System (GPS) receivers. Currently, all the SHPO GIS data is projected in NAD_1927.

Rule 12.8.3. Report Guidelines for Negative Findings Reports

Introduction

For investigations such as Phase I or monitoring projects that do not identify archaeological sites or standing structures within a project area, investigators can provide a more abbreviated report that omits a context stud.

1. The MSSHPO will review all negative finding reports.
2. The MSSHPO expects all investigators to present professional quality draft reports. Once the MSSHPO has reviewed the draft report, the comment letter will identify items that must be addressed in order for the report to be finalized, and those items that are suggestions for improving the final report. After the comments are addressed, a final report should be submitted in a timely fashion.
3. Investigators submitting reports to the MSSHPO must provide one bound copy of all reports. For final reports, investigators must also provide an electronic copy of the report in "pdf" format. At least one paper copy of appendix materials must be submitted with a final report.
4. **MDAH will no longer accept a letter report for an archaeological survey.**

Rule 12.8.4. Phase I Reporting

Reporting Format

1. Report Cover - Include the title of the report, the lead federal or state agency, the contractor performing the work, the word "Draft" or "Final," and the date of the report.
2. Title page - Include the title of the report, the author(s), the date written (month and year), the contracting firm and the lead federal or state agency with their addresses, and phone numbers, and the agency contract/permit number where applicable.

3. Management Summary - Two paragraph maximum to include a brief summary of the project (e.g., Phase I, Monitoring) and project area, its size (acres/hectares), and the county or counties where the work was done.
4. Table of Contents - Headings should duplicate verbatim those found in the text. The Table of Contents should use leader tabs between headings page numbers. All appendix materials should be listed in the Table of Contents as well.
5. List of Figures - Duplicate verbatim the first sentence of the captions of each figure in the text. The List of Figures should use leader tabs between the figure caption and page number.
6. List of Tables - Duplicate verbatim the title of each table in the text. The List of Table should use leader tabs between the table title and page number.
7. Pagination - The pagination for the front matter must be in lower case Roman numerals.

Report Body (Headings)

1. Pagination - The pages for all final reports must be consecutively numbered in Arabic numerals. Pagination by chapter numbers (e.g., 1-2, 3-5, 7-35 etc.) is acceptable for draft reports.
2. Introduction - Outline the scope of work, area of potential effect (APE), project description, general description of the project's history, agency(s) involved, project setting and boundaries, purpose of the archaeological investigations, etc. List the staff and dates of investigation. Provide a detail of a 7.5' USGS topographic quadrangle map (1:24,000 scale) showing the location of the area being investigated with a state inset map showing the project location within the state of Mississippi. All maps should include a scale, north arrow, and legend. Briefly summarize the results of the archaeology and the investigator's recommendations for further work. Wherever applicable, provide a legal description of the project area that includes Township, Range, and Section. Also, provide a synopsis of the report organization.
3. Environmental Setting - Limit the discussion to the geomorphology, soils, and other ecological information relevant to the development of the research design and/or the understanding of the project area. Do not include an extended discussion of environmental features unless it is relevant to the discussion and interpretation of the negative findings.
4. Previous Investigations (archaeological, historical and/or architectural where applicable) - This section should place the current project within the context of previous investigations, and the region- appropriate culture history, including the locations of sites and standing structures, appropriate methodology, results, interpretations, and significant research questions previous investigators have raised in and around a project area. Relative to these subjects, all reports of surveys, site forms, and standing structure forms within one mile of the project area must be reviewed and summarized for Phase I survey reports. For extended linear project areas such as pipelines, highway rights-of-way etc. investigators may consider all sites, structures, and previous projects within one half (0.5)

miles of the project's APE. This information about surrounding sites may be presented in tabular form, but must include, at a minimum site or structure number, name (if any), and eligibility for the National Register.

5. Results - Describe the fieldwork results, including the number of positive and negative shovel tests, and the analyses of all recovered or identified materials. Newly recorded sites and updated sites must be described individually (isolated finds can either be discussed individually or placed in a table). The locations of all positive and negative shovel test locations excavated for site definition purposes are required to be presented on the site map in Phase I reports. All sites described in a report must include a map of the site that includes site boundaries, shovel tests locations, topography, and features, among other elements. Provide at least one overview photograph of the project area and of each site described in the report. Clearly state the determination of eligibility for the NRHP for each site and note which criterion (A, B, C, or D) applies to this eligibility. Sites should be described as Eligible, Not Eligible, or Undetermined (further investigation required). The term "Potentially Eligible" is not an acceptable recommendation for the NRHP, in accordance with the guidelines set by the Advisory Council on Historic Preservation (ACHP). Site descriptions in reports should be consistent with information presented on site cards. All archaeological materials should be thoroughly described in the report, with citations for artifact classifications and chronological interpretations. Photographs and/or illustrations of representative diagnostic artifacts are encouraged.
6. Summary and Recommendation - Succinctly summarize the results of the research and provide archaeological interpretations. Clearly explain the possible adverse effect a proposed project will have on cultural resources and make recommendations for additional work if needed. Include management recommendations relative to ground-disturbing activities and preservation or mitigation of impact on archaeological resources. Usually for Phase I investigations, sites that are not eligible for the National Register require no additional investigations. Sites that are recommended as "undetermined" require further archaeological investigation: most typically a Phase II Assessment of Eligibility for the National Register.
7. References Cited and Appendices - A list of references cited should generally follow the summary chapter of the report. References in the texts of reports submitted should use the Style Guide for the Society of American Archaeology (SAA). The guidelines are at: <http://www.saa.org/AbouttheSociety/Publications/StyleGuide/tabid/984/Default.aspx>. Appendices items such as shovel test forms, artifact catalog sheets, correspondence etc. may be included in a report as an appendix if they are cited in the body of the report. If artifacts recovered during a project are returned to a property owner or owners, any correspondence or other related documents must be included in the appendices of a report.

Rule 12.8.5. Phase II, and Phase III Reporting

The results of Phase II Evaluation and Phase III Mitigation should be presented in a standard report format and follow the submission procedures below. For Phase II and Phase III reports, information from specialists (i.e. geomorphology, remote sensing, floral and/or faunal analysis,

etc.) should be integrated into the body of the report text and the entire original specialist reports provided as appendices.

Standard Report Format Template:

Title Page

Title of report including project phase, project name, municipality, and county

Author(s) and organization

Agency or client

Report date

Abstract

Type of project and location

Area of Potential Effect (APE) in acres and hectares

Phase I or Phase II results

Project impacts

Recommendations

Table of Contents

List of Figures, Plates, and/or Tables

Introduction

Project Purpose

Project Administration, organization, sponsors, and agency

Description of the proposed project, including project constraints if applicable

Definition and description of the Area of Potential Effect (APE)

Dates(s) of archaeological work

Acknowledgements (if desired)

Project Location and General Description

Physiographic description of the project area

Present land use patterns (e.g. commercial, agricultural, etc.)

Description of current conditions with photographs

Background Research and/or Context

Culture History

Research and Field Methodology

Sample design and rationale

Excavation methods and rationale
Artifact/sample analytical methods and rationale
Discussion of limits of total project area versus area actually investigated

Field Results

Results of field work
Assessment of the reliability of the data generated as a result of the project
Figure(s) that illustrate the locations(s) and methods(s) of all survey including areas identified as disturbed. Key symbols and/or shading to a legend.
Soil profiles labeled with excavation levels, soil horizons, and artifact counts (if applicable)
For each site:
Soil descriptions and geomorphological interpretations
Maps, photographs, and drawings. Provide labels that identify artifact provenience, type, and diagnostic or cultural affiliation
Total artifact count, count by type, stratum, and feature
Summary/description of cultural features when applicable; include plans and profiles
Site chronology

Artifact Description and Analysis

Descriptive artifact inventory (provenience and class)
Tables summarizing recovered artifacts
References for artifact identification sources
Photographs of diagnostic artifacts
Summary of floral and faunal analysis
Discussion of artifacts used for construction of site chronology
Discussion of final disposition of collected data

Site Interpretations

Placement of each site within its relevant context
How does each site relate to the archaeological record of the area?
Discussion of site function, settlement patterns, and artifact distribution (intra-and intersite).
Assessment of each site's National Register eligibility (if applicable)
Discussion of future research potential for each site (if applicable)

Summary and Recommendations

Summary of results
Assessment of the results as compared to the goal and purpose of the project
Discussion of project effects to identified resources

References Cited (American Antiquity bibliographic style)

Appendices

Rule 12.9.0 Archaeological Investigations on State Lands and Mississippi Landmarks

All archaeological work on state lands and/or on Mississippi Landmarks shall follow the guidelines found in Sections 7.0 and 8.0 of these Standards. In addition, a scope of work and a Notice of Intent must be completed, submitted to the Chief Archaeologist and approved by MDAH (MSSHPO). A permit must be issued prior to the start of any field work (See Section 17.0. Permits).

Source: Miss. Code § 39-7-22

9.1. Preparing a Scope of Work

The Scope of Work sets forth the project's research design and includes, at minimum, a detailed discussion of:

1. Specific legal jurisdiction under which study is being undertaken (See Section 1.2)
2. Sources of public funding, if any.
3. Client for whom study is being conducted and if project sponsor is different than client.
4. The proposed development and the project's area of potential effect, including number of acres/Hectares involved in project.
5. Research design.
6. Potential project impacts.
7. Content and format of study report (and draft report, if appropriate).
8. Public education and outreach efforts, as appropriate (See Section 15.0)
9. Care and management of archaeological collections, data, and records (See Section 10.0).
10. Estimated schedule in calendar days of all study tasks, including background research, beginning and ending date of field work, analyses and interpretation, report, public education and outreach activities, and any other major task.
11. Names of key personnel responsible for different study tasks and level of personnel effort to be utilized.
12. Budget (This information is provided to clients and is not generally provided to the MSSHPO).

Rule 12.9.2. Notice of Intent

Mississippi Landmarks

The Mississippi Landmark designation is the highest form of recognition bestowed on properties by the state of Mississippi and offers the fullest protection against changes that might alter a property's historic character. Publicly owned properties that are determined to be historically or architecturally significant may be considered for designation. Significant publicly owned archaeological sites are automatically deemed Mississippi Landmarks under the Mississippi Antiquities Law.

Mississippi Landmark Search

After a property is deemed eligible for consideration, the owner of the property is notified and given the opportunity to respond. A public notice is also published in the local newspaper to solicit comments from the public for a twenty-one day period. After that period has elapsed, the comments are considered at the next meeting of MDAH Board of Trustees, and, if there is no opposition, formal action may be taken to designate the property as a Mississippi Landmark. If designated, the property is then recorded in the deed records of the appropriate county by the Chancery Clerk as a Mississippi Landmark.

MDAH maintains an ongoing survey of likely Mississippi Landmark properties, but also welcomes nominations by communities or private citizens. Although the program was designed for public properties, private citizens who are committed to the long-term preservation of their own historically significant properties may nominate those as well.

Proposed changes to a Mississippi Landmark must be approved in advance by the Permit Committee of the Board of Trustees of the Department of Archives and History.

[Notice of Intent for Buildings \(PDF\)](#)

[Notice of Intent for Archaeology \(PDF\)](#)

[Notice of Completion Form \(PDF\)](#)

[Mississippi Antiquities Law \(PDF\)](#)

Rule 12.10.0. Laboratory and Curation Guidelines

While minimum standards for artifact processing, analyses, and curation are outlined below, investigators should tailor their activities to the unique aspects of each project. Overall, it is advisable to consult with MSSHPO, the curatorial facility, and any specialists early in the planning process.

Processing, analyzing, and curating artifacts must occur in secure and safe environments to prevent loss of significant data. The Principal Investigator (PI) and Field Director (FD) are ultimately responsible for ensuring that artifact data and integrity are preserved.

The laboratory staff responsible for basic artifact processing and analysis must have sufficient knowledge to do the job, have access to appropriate comparative collections, and have access to experts when needed. Laboratory staff should have an undergraduate degree in anthropology, archaeology or closely related field. Laboratory Managers (LM) may oversee the analysis and

identification in lieu of the PI or FD, but they should also have the appropriate professional qualification standards with an advanced degree in archaeology (or similar field). The LM should also have at least six months of supervised experience in both prehistoric and historic archaeology, similar to SOI Standards of Qualification under 36 CFR Part 61. Additionally, laboratory staff and/or the Project Archaeologist should have training in basic curatorial procedures.

Rule 12.10.1. Field Tracking Methods

The choice of a system for tracking artifacts in the field is at the discretion of the investigator. However, the tracking system should be consistently applied throughout the project. During fieldwork, the recorder will enter a preliminary description of the artifacts in field notes and forms before placing them in labeled containers that fully protect them from damage. Artifacts can then be brought back to the laboratory for cleaning and analysis.

Rule 12.10.2. Photographing

Minimum megapixels for photographing artifacts should be no less than 20 and taken at 300 dpi minimum resolution. Photos should be taken with a camera (not cell phones) and should be focused with notable features able to be seen clearly. Ideally, cameras should have a macro lense for detailed close ups of anomalies. Any photos submitted with blurry images, no scale, or on backgrounds which render important details invisible will not be accepted. A good example of why this is important can be found here: <http://catdir.loc.gov/catdir/samples/cam031/93046903.pdf>

A neutral gray background is preferable to black or white backgrounds for artifact photos because it gives a uniform appearance for color variations within artifacts, i.e. glaze colors, chert colors, raw material colors, etc. Photos should be taken with a scale in the photograph (professional quality scale preferred, in mm/cm increments). Photo descriptions should be included in a photo log with clear descriptions using analysis information below. Photographs should have the following information listed on each print: Photographer, Photograph number, site number, brief description, and date.

Rule 12.10.3. Processing

All collected materials should be cleaned (if appropriate), identified, and weighed in the lab. Before cleaning each artifact, the recorder will check its condition (e.g., for friability) and analyze its surface for easily lost information (e.g., false form minerals, organic materials, pigments, etc.). Artifacts should then be cleaned in a manner that preserves the information they contain (see the NPS guidance http://www.nps.gov/archeology/collections/field_03.htm for more information on cleaning).

After they are clean, all diagnostic artifacts should be labeled to record site number, provenience, and catalog number. Care should be taken to ensure that important features like edge wear are not obscured during labeling. In the event that an artifact cannot be labeled, it is crucial to make sure that a labeling tag is included with the artifact and contains the provenience information.

Artifacts, such as fire cracked rock (FCR), brick, metal, roofing and building materials, coal and cinder, and unmodified chert cobbles, should have a representative sample retained, with the remainder being weighed, recorded, and discarded. Decisions regarding discard must be made by the PI, in consultation with experts in the research potential of the materials in question, and the MSSHPO. Only materials that are not temporally or stylistically diagnostic may be discarded. Any sampling strategy must account for possible destructive analysis of a portion of the sample in the future. The sampling strategy will vary among sites, but samples from all features must be retained potentially from all proveniences. The strategy must address potential research questions with regard to special and temporal variation. Further questions regarding curation, such as an appropriate representative sample percentage should be directed toward MDAH Archaeology staff on a case-by-case basis.

Please use the following guidance for culling representative samples:

1. Fire-cracked rock (FCR) not associated with features may be discarded. FCR from features should either be retained in full or sampled.
2. Save only whole bricks, dimensional bricks, or bricks with maker's marks. If there are duplicates, save only a sample. Discard all non-dimensional brick.
3. Discard any unrecognizable metal lumps with active corrosion.
4. Retain a sample of roofing materials, such as slate or tiles.
5. Retain a sample of mortar, asphalt, plaster, cinder and coal.

If any materials are discarded, indicate in the artifact catalog which materials were discarded or sampled and what percentage was retained. Also, indicate on the artifact bags whether the contents were sampled and the percentage that was retained. Provide a written explanation of the sampling strategy used for each artifact class, a justification, and the location where the materials were discarded.

*****For collections from Phase I Survey projects over 500 acres or Phase II or Phase III projects, the sampling strategy should be discussed in the Research Proposal submitted prior to initiation of the project. The sampling strategy should be discussed and approved by MSSHPO.**

Numbers written on artifacts should be reversible. Acryloid (or Paraloid) B-72 is the sealant of choice for its longevity. A small labeling area should be chosen, and an undercoat of the Acryloid B-72 placed on only this area of the artifact. The artifact will then be labeled on this area using a Rapidograph, quill, or steel-nib pen and black or white India ink. No felt-tipped

pens, self-stick labels, tape, rubber cement, fingernail polish, or typing correction fluid should be used to label artifacts. After allowing sufficient time for drying, an additional coat of the sealant is to be applied over the label. As an alternative to the white ink, white Acryloid B-72 is available commercially and may be substituted for the undercoat (a clear overcoat is still needed). All diagnostic and/or distinctive artifacts will need to be labeled, as well as any artifacts that are to be cross-mended, separated for specialized analysis, or for display.

All artifacts will be bagged individually or by type in self-sealing polyethylene bags at least 4 mil thick. Those available as food storage bags are not acceptable as they are often not polyethylene. A descriptive tag should be enclosed in each individual/type artifact bag. This tag should give provenience, description, and count for the contents. Artifacts may be bagged by provenience or type (i.e., ceramics, lithics, etc., from all proveniences stored together, or all types of artifacts bagged by excavation provenience) based on the analysis needed. However, the laboratory methods section of the report will detail this information. The researcher should strive to curate all artifacts in a manner that will allow future researchers to duplicate their methods. Additional attention needs to be paid to fragile or easily damaged artifacts in the bagging process so as to not inflict accidental harm (such as heavy or sharp artifacts, for example, should be bagged separately from fragile ones).

Identification tags for boxes or bags will be prepared. Tags will be made of an inert, waterproof, archaically sound material (e.g., Nalgene, Tyvek, polyweave, etc., or an acid-free paper tag inserted into an appropriately sized polyethylene self-sealing bag) and marked with ink that is fade-proof, waterproof, and archaically sound. The bags containing the artifacts will be labeled as well. All information on the exterior of the bag will be repeated on an internal tag of the type described above.

Laboratory staff should be aware of curation policies of the various repositories (for collections to be curated with MDAH, see conservation and curation policy Section 10.5.). Additionally, all artifacts should be handled to the standards of SHA/SSA/AIA and 36 CFR Part 79.

Rule 12.10.4. Analysis

If detailed analysis of certain archaeological materials is planned, it is advisable to include appropriate specialists as early in the project as possible.

Because most archaeological sites are valuable primarily because of their research potential, artifact analysis generally should follow well-established classification schemes and typologies. The choice of a specific system will depend on the investigators goals and should be fully defined and referenced in the project report. MDAH prefers to use the lexicon from DAACS for artifact description. Regardless of which classification system one uses, certain basic descriptions and analyses must be included in the report:

1. Artifact identification number or provenience.

2. Material (e.g., lithic, ceramic, glass).
3. Class (e.g., projectile point, sherd, bead).
4. Count and/or weight, as appropriate.
5. Dimensions, if appropriate.
6. Type (e.g., Clovis, Creamware, etc.).
7. Noteworthy attributes (e.g., form, decoration, method of use, internal or external dating).

Examples of diagnostic prehistoric attributes include pottery sherds that are decorated, rims, bases, or lugs, Poverty Point Objects, figurines, ear spools, complete vessels; lithic points, scrapers, drills, ground stone, bifaces; exotic (imported) raw material; and worked bone.

Examples of diagnostic historic attributes include ceramic sherds that are decorated, rims, maker's marks, complete vessels, buttons, marbles, pipes, figurines and doll parts; cut, pressed, or decorated glass, vessel bases and lips, labels, and complete vessels; identifiable metals such as gun parts, tools, hinges, nails, buckles, machine parts, and eating utensils; identifiable plastic or rubber; and worked bone.

A laboratory or catalog sheet printed on archival paper with acid-free, waterproof ink should be used to record the analyst's observations. In addition, the analyst may keep a diary of any observations, impressions, drawings, and any special analyses performed on the artifacts. This will become part of the official record when the collection is curated.

A Pantone color chips should be used to describe color variations in artifacts for uniform descriptions <http://www.pantone.com/solid-chips-coated-uncoated> . For color descriptions of historic artifacts (specifically ceramic, you can print color chips from the DAACS website: <http://www.daacs.org/about-the-database/>

Rule 12.10.5. Conservation and Curation

MDAH requires that all collections (Section 106 projects and MS Landmarks) be curated at a curatorial facility which meets the standards outlined in 36 CFR Part 79. State owned projects, such as Mississippi Landmarks, will be curated at MDAH Museum Facilities. Selection of a facility is best made early in the project and, minimally, before the laboratory analysis has begun.

The designated curation facility shall be identified in the project report and on the site form(s).

All pertinent field, laboratory, and report documentation should be archivally prepared and remitted to the curation facility with the artifacts. This includes labeling each document package (i.e., notebook, folder, etc.) and map with the state trinomial and accession numbers. For projects where no artifacts were recovered, notes and other project materials should be prepared for curation. This should include any photographic material and electronic media including any

artifact databases. If these databases are coded, a copy of the coding system should be supplied to the curation facility.

Procedures for Curated Collections

- a. Ownership of the collection must be clear. For donated or long-term loan collections, a copy of the agreement must accompany the collection.
- b. A collection must include all data and paperwork generated as a result of a project including, but not limited to: all field notes, specimens, records, photographs, maps, computer-generated media, GPS/GIS data, metadata and other all other data. All paper documents and photographs **must be originals**. One bound copy of the final report and one digital copy must be included with the collection.
- c. All necessary conservation treatment of artifacts or records must be completed prior to arriving at the curatorial facility. A statement indicating which objects received conservation treatment, along with a conservation record should accompany the collection Artifacts which will need future conservation treatments need to be identified and the cost of those treatments may be assessed in addition to the standard curation fee.
- d. Any collection that is infested with vermin will be returned promptly at the expense of the owner.

Standards for Records

- a. All records and notes must be accompanied by a catalog. The catalog must include, but is not limited to: project, site, record type, and subject for each document or group of related documents. All field notes, forms, drawings, catalogues, inventories will be printed or copied onto acid-free paper. All paper records will be placed in acid-free archival folders that are permanently labeled with the pertinent information listed previously. Bag tags must be included inside all artifact bags.
- b. Records with a significant amount of dirt or soil smears will be copied before being submitted for curation. All soiled originals will be curated with the artifacts.
- c. A copy of all records must be submitted on acid-free paper. These will be stored separately from the originals as per 36 CFR Part 79.9, 6ii.
- d. All computer generated media must be accompanied by a paper copy of the data contained on the cd and a description of the programs used to create the data. If any

information was derived by custom computer programming, a description of the file structures must also be included. All metadata must also be included.

Standards for Artifact Collections

- a. All artifacts must be organized by site and provenience within each site. All materials separated out for photos, etc. should be re-incorporated into their original provenience.
- b. All artifacts must be contained in a 4 mil polyethelene “zip lock” type bags with a white panel area for descriptions. Sandwich bags, freezer bags, paper bags and all other kinds of bags are not appropriate and will not be accepted. All provenience information will be written in the white panel area of the bag in permanent black marker (i.e. sharpie marker/pen). Bags must be punched with a standard hole punch near the top of the bag to allow air/moisture to escape. Faunal remains/human remains can be placed in a paper bag inside a plastic 4 mil polyethelene zip lock bag. Soil samples also need to be placed in 4 mil polyethelene bags but can be secured with string or wire. Fragile items must be packed in acid free paper and placed inside MDAH approved archival boxes.
- c. All artifacts and records should be packed into the standard MDAH box after they arrive and are assessed; these boxes measure 15"L x 12"W x 10"H (12 ³/₄"W with lid on). MDAH uses Perma/Cor Coroplast Corrugated Bulk Storage Carton which is available to order through University Products (Item number 225-0771). Other brands may be used but they must fit the measurements above. Artifacts and records, therefore, can be shipped in a manner left up to the submitter. Each box must contain two (2) copies of bag by bag inventory of its contents. Inventory information must include but is not limited to: site number, provenience, type of material and catalog number.
- d. Each box must be labeled on the front, on one side and inside. Box labels must be printed on archival card-stock paper and contained within a plastic envelope affixed to the box (the inside label does not have to be in an envelope). Any label template may be used, but each label should include the following information: Box Number, Accession Number, Consultant Name, Owner Name (if a state or federal agency owns the collection), Project Name, Site Number(s), Site Name (if appropriate), County, and Description of Box Contents. MDAH uses ULINE 4" x 6" Lock and Press Side Adhesive-backed Envelopes (Model No. S-128) to hold box labels.
- e. Collections stored at MDAH that are federally curated (i.e., not under MDAH-ownership) are curated under a fee basis. Artifacts curated under federal collections must come to MDAH “curation ready” and may be rejected or subject to additional costs to curate the items, when necessary.

Transfer of materials to MDAH

To make arrangements for transfer of collections to MDAH, please contact the Chief Archaeologist. A transfer memo should accompany any delivered material, along with a brief description of items included in the delivery.

Rule 12.11.0. GIS and Electronic Submission Guidelines

The Society for American Archaeology (SAA) and the Society for Historical Archaeology have stipulated guidelines for the curation of archaeological data where archaeologists are obligated to maintain detailed archaeological records. These responsibilities are as important as the mission to protect sites or include descendent communities. The implementation of a “living documents” approach to GIS meets this goal, where a living document remains usable and useful after its initial creation. Datasets used in the creation of living documents should meet four criteria:

1. That the dataset remain accessible by more than one person;
2. That it can integrate with other types of data such as those from the natural sciences;
3. That it is easily updated with future research;
4. That it results in the creation of accompanying documentation.

New projects will require the submission of shapefiles that should be in MSTM projection. Any site data (point and polygon) that is provided should include the Site Number for each site. Any report data (point, line, or polygon) should include the boundaries of the area surveyed and the title of the report so we know what report it goes to when we put it in the GIS. If transects are included in the GIS data, project boundaries must also be included as well as the MDAH report number. This data is requested so that MDAH may most accurately reflect survey coverage across the state.

Metadata must include how the data was collected, the instrumentation and software used, and whether or not data was collected in the field or post-processed.

Source: 36CFR 61.4 (b)(2)(ii)

Rule 12.12.0. Tribal Consultation

Agencies and Tribes, for the most part, have similar feelings about what constitutes consultation, how it should be conducted, and what constitutes successful consultation. Experience reveals that mutual respect must be the basis upon which successful consultation builds, and that coming to a final agreement is not as important as building ongoing channels of communication. Successful consultation begins early in the planning stages, and is predicated on each party being knowledgeable about the project and the priorities and desires of the other parties. Though not without cost, successful consultation results in better and lasting final agreements (NATHPO 2005).

Rule 12.12.1. Legal Requirements of Consultation with Tribes

The legal obligation of Federal Agencies to consult with Tribes on a government-to-government basis begins in the Constitution, in Article I Section 8, also known as the Commerce Clause, where Congress is empowered to regulate commerce with foreign governments, between the states and with the Indian Tribes. In Federal Indian policy, it is unclear whether Tribes are more like foreign nations or like states, but clearly, the government of the United States has an obligation to consult with Tribes as sovereign nations on matters of interest and concern to Tribes. The constitutional mandate is expressed in statutes, executive orders and the policies of the several Federal Agencies that touch upon Tribal matters. In brief these are:

1. NHPA requires consultation with Indian Tribes on places of traditional religious and cultural significance, in identifying and determining treatment modalities within the area of potential effect of an undertaking. Consultation is also required with Tribes that have assumed historic preservation duties as THPOs for sites on Tribal land and with Tribes on the mitigation of effects to historic and sacred places on federal land. Section 101(d)(6)(B) of the act requires the Agency official to consult with any Indian tribe or Native Hawaiian organization that attaches religious and cultural significance to historic properties that may be affected by an undertaking. This requirement applies regardless of the location of the historic property. Such Indian tribe or Native Hawaiian organization shall be a consulting party.
2. National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) is directed at the impacts to the human environment, which includes the social and cultural relationship of people to the physical environment. Under this law there is an obligation to consult with Tribes concerning impacts to sacred sites and on the mitigation of actions to sites of concern to Tribes that is not limited by the National Register eligibility criteria (36 C.F.R.60.4)
3. Archaeological Resources Protection Act (ARPA) is a law directed at protecting “archaeological” sites for the important information that can be retrieved, but the law also requires Federal Agencies to notify Tribes of a permit for excavation on federal land that will include sites of religious or cultural importance to Tribes. On Indian lands, the federal Agency must have the permission of the Tribe to issue an ARPA permit. The federal government has an obligation to keep track of such items when excavated pursuant to a permit in the event that the “Indian owners” may want to retrieve them. All fines and civil penalties collected and all items seized from ARPA civil and criminal prosecutions arising from incidents on Indian lands must be remitted to the Tribe. The costs of reburial of human remains and funerary objects disrupted by looters will be added to the restitution sought from violators.
4. Native American Graves Protection and Repatriation Act (NAGPRA) requires that a general summary of the collection be disseminated to all possibly interested Tribes to facilitate consultation which can lead to the repatriation and to assist in the preparation of an itemized inventory of human remains and associated funerary items. On federal land, Agencies that do not consult with Tribes prior to exhumation of sites of importance to

Tribes and develop an agreement for “Intentional Excavation,” are punished by a mandatory 30 day cessation of work for each “Inadvertent Discovery,” that is a find in the absence of a plan arrived at through consultation with the impacted Tribes. Consultation is also required to determine the means of transfer of repatriated items.

5. Executive Order 12875 (1993) Tribal Governance, specifies that the federal government must consult with Indian Tribal governments on matters that significantly or uniquely affect Tribal government. By Executive Memorandum of April 29, 1994, the federal government must consult with federally-recognized Tribal governments prior to taking actions that will affect those Tribal governments (See below for the current administration’s Executive Memorandum on the Government-to-Government Relationship).
6. Executive Order 12898 (1994) Environmental Justice, specifies that the federal Agency will consult with Tribal leaders on steps to be taken to insure that environmental justice requirements are applied to federally-recognized Tribes. This includes research to address issues of adverse environmental impact in areas of low-income and minority populations, which include Tribes generally and with regard to subsistence consumption of fish and wildlife, which pertain to Tribes exclusively.
7. Executive Order 13007 (1996) Sacred Sites, applies on federal land and directs the Federal Agencies to accommodate access to and ceremonial use of Indian sacred sites by Indian religious practitioners, as well as to avoid adversely affecting the physical integrity of such sacred sites. Although Federal Agencies must consult with Tribes to learn the existence of places, which require management decisions to be made, the directive requires Agencies to maintain the confidentiality of sacred sites where appropriate for their protection.
8. Executive Order 13084 (1998) Consultation and Coordination with Indian Tribal Governments, reaffirms the unique government-to-government relationship between Agencies and Tribes. The Order makes it clear that the obligation is upon the federal government and not the Tribes to instigate and insure that consultation occurs on a timely basis. The consultation is defined as an activity to obtain meaningful and timely input from Tribes on matters that significantly or uniquely affect Tribal communities. In those instances where Tribal laws exist, the Federal Agencies are to defer to Tribes and waive Agency control. Further, rulemaking on matters of concern to Tribes should include consultation with Tribes, necessitating the development of consensual mechanisms to arrive at agreements. This Executive Order embodies the complete shift in the enfranchised status of Tribes in the post-1960 era of Tribal self-determination and sovereignty. (Superseded by E.O. 13175)
9. Executive Order 13175 (2000) Consultation with Indian Tribal Governments, would seem redundant, but appeared necessary where Agencies were slow to develop Tribal consultation policies and the courts were slow to enfranchise Tribes. This Order firmly establishes the policy of the administrative branch of government as one that institutionalizes regular and meaningful consultation with Tribes in the development of federal policies affecting Tribes. It directs that Agencies respect treaty rights and grants wide discretion to Tribes in self-governance and the development of Tribal policy. Further, this Order directs each Agency to develop a consultation process. • Executive

Memorandum, Government-to-Government Relationship with Tribal Governments, (September 2004), recognizes the unique legal and political relationship of Tribes, and reaffirms that each executive department and Agency fully respect the rights of self-government and self-determination in their working relationships with federally-recognized Tribal governments.

Rule 12.12.2 Federal Agency Policies

Federal Agency regulations and policies pertaining to consultation with Native Americans are noted briefly below (Note: Some policies are titled protocol, but contain a statement of policy rather than an operational protocol. Agency protocols for consultation are listed in Section IV).

NPS Management Policies include the following:

1. Regarding burials (5.3.4)
2. Regarding cultural interpretation (7.5.5)
3. Regarding cultural resources (5.2.1)
4. Regarding ethnographic resources (5.3.5.3.1)
5. Regarding game harvest regulations (4.4.3)
6. Regarding museum objects (5.3.5.5)
7. Regarding natural resource management (4.1.4)
8. Regarding Sacred Sites (5.3.5.3.2)

In general these policies state that the practices, traditions and beliefs of Native Americans will be considered in any treatment and planning decision of the NPS, and that Native Americans will be a meaningful part of the information gathering process to ascertain knowledge of the sites and concerns and desires of Native Americans.

The **Bureau of Indian Affairs (BIA)**, which is responsible for over 50 million acres of land held in trust by the federal government on behalf of Tribes and Alaskan Natives, has Guidelines for Integrated Resource Management Planning in Indian Country (IRMP). The IRMP outlines an involved process as a blueprint for consultation with Tribes on the management of cultural resources on Tribal lands by the Tribe.

United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) Forest Service has a draft general consultation policy process (FSM 1563) which references the regulations to which it applies.

USDA Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) executed a nationwide Programmatic Agreement, May 2002, with the ACHP and the National Conference of State Historic

Preservation Officers, to institute a policy of developing consultation agreements at the state level with individual Tribal governments.

Department of Defense (DoD) adopted a policy on American Indians and Alaska Natives in 1998, which includes consultation with Tribes concerning proposed military activities that could affect Tribal lands and resources, including sacred sites, on and off military reservations.

The **Department of Transportation's (DOT) Federal Highway Administration (FHWA)** has a Native American Coordination Program, which provides guidance and technical assistance to Federally-recognized Tribes, and information for state DOTs on working relationships with Tribes, including a section with individual Tribal programmatic agreements.

Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD) has a Government-to-Government Tribal Consultation Policy (2001) and American Indian and Alaskan Native Policy Statement (1994).

Department of Energy (DOE) has a Native American and Alaska Native Tribal Government Policy (2000) and an Environmental Policy & Guidance, which has a section on the American Indian Religious Freedom and Native American Graves Protection and Repatriation Acts.

Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) has a Policy for the Administration of Environmental Programs on Indian Reservations (1984) and a Memorandum of Actions for Strengthening EPA's Tribal Operations (1994). 11

Federal Communications Commission (FCC) has a Statement of Policy on Establishing a Government-to-Government Relationship with Indian Tribes (2000).

Some Primary Consultation Principles include:

- a. True government-to-government contact between the Agency and Tribe, where high level Agency representatives meet with Tribal leaders;
- b. Multiple contacts that begin early in the planning process and continue throughout the project;
- c. Multiple venues for consultation, such as the Agency office and locations close to Tribes and the area of the undertaking;
- d. Formal and informal meetings;
- e. The existence of an Agency Tribal Liaison;
- f. The Agency's fostering of a relationship with the THPO;
- g. An inclusive approach to contacting Tribes having an interest;

- h. Consultation with unrecognized Tribes, separate from recognized Tribes, unless the unrecognized Tribe has an on-going relationship with the recognized Tribe;
- i. An early effort to identify the areas of concern to the Tribes;
- j. Provision to Tribes of full and candid information prior to the first meeting;
- k. An open-ended and flexible agenda (no hidden agendas);
- l. Facilitators for the sessions alternate between Agency and Tribal leaders;
- m. A concerted effort by the Agency to have all Tribes with an interest be present for all sessions;
- n. A successful result is viewed as partners arriving at an agreement, but reaching an agreement is not an end in itself;
- o. Tribes participate in consultation on the invitee list as a preliminary consultation and participate on the agenda setting and planning of the consultation.

It is the federal agency's responsibility to conduct formal tribal consultation, not the contractor and/or archaeologist. For further information on Tribal Consultation, please see [Tribal Consultation Best Practices in Historic Preservation 2005](http://www.nathpo.org/PDF/Tribal_Consultation.pdf) which can be found at: http://www.nathpo.org/PDF/Tribal_Consultation.pdf or the Department of Interior's Tribal Consultation Policy webpage at: <https://www.doi.gov/tribes/Tribal-Consultation-Policy>

Rule 12.13.0. Treatment of Human Remains

It is the responsibility of the archaeologist to comply with all state and federal legislation (e.g., Mississippi Antiquities Law, Native American Graves Protection and Repatriation Act) concerning archaeological sites and the treatment of Native American human remains encountered during archaeological investigations. Additionally, some agencies have internal guidelines governing the treatment of human remains (e.g., USDA Forest Service's Human Remains Policy), and these should also be consulted when applicable. If human remains are discovered that are not Native American in origin (meaning dating to historic times **and** not Native American), then the principal investigator should immediately notify the county coroner, sheriff, and/or board of supervisors to begin consultation. Should Native American human remains be discovered, archaeological activities (e.g., shovel testing, test excavations, mechanical stripping) and/or project-related activities will cease in that area. The field archaeologist will contact the governing/contracting agency for further instruction. In the absence of Federal involvement, if Native American burials are encountered on state, county,

municipal or private land, the field archaeologist will contact MSSHPO and apply for a burial excavation permit. Burial excavation permits may also be applied for in anticipation of encountering burials. Work may continue in the area once a burial excavation permit has been granted. Encountered aboriginal human remains shall be recorded, handled, and protected according to the stipulations stated in the permit.

Under the provisions of the State Antiquities Law (39-7-31), the Board of Trustees of MDAH is given the responsibility of considering and permitting, if deemed appropriate, the excavation of prehistoric or historic Indian burials. Specifically, 39-7-31 states:

No person without a permit from the board and without written permission of the landowner, shall intentionally injure, disfigure, remove, excavate, damage, take, dig into, or destroy any prehistoric or historic American Indian or aboriginal burial.

As stated in 39-7-3 (Declaration of Public Policy), it is the policy of the State of Mississippi and in the interest of the State to protect and preserve archaeological sites of every character. Burials in the context of the Antiquities Law are archaeological sites. They are, however, very special kinds of archaeological sites which are given additional legal protection by other laws. For this reason, burials are the only type of site for which MSSHPO has legal authority on private property, except for “Mississippi Landmarks” for which this authority is voluntarily given by the landowner.

In order to prevent confusion and to establish clear directives, the following guidelines are instituted:

- 1.No permit will be issued unless the excavation is to be performed or supervised by an archaeologist meeting the aforementioned professional qualifications. It is recommended that a physical anthropologist be present during the excavation to ensure the recovery of a maximum amount of pertinent information.
- 2.A report, following the guidelines established in this document, detailing the findings of the excavation, including photographs and sketches, must be submitted to MSSHPO within one year of completion of the excavation.
- 3.If the burial(s) in question is reasonably expected to be of a known, existing tribe, the written comments of that tribe shall be sought and, if obtained, submitted in written form to MSSHPO when the application is made for a permit. ***If the burial(s) is from a historic period occupation and is not Native American, the county coroner will take possession of the burial(s), not MSSHPO.***
- 4.The remains are to be curated in a facility that meets or exceeds standards set forth in 36 CFR 79 or reburied after scientific analysis. The decision on whether to require reburial will be determined by MSSHPO after reviewing documentation submitted with the request for a burial excavation permit (see Step 3).
- 5.Permits to excavate burials will not be issued in most circumstances unless there is a threat to the integrity of the burial(s) through vandalism, natural forces (e.g., erosion, inundation), or development which is clearly in the public interest.

6. For purposes of these guidelines, a burial is understood to include the items that are interred with the body/human remains.
7. In the event of the unintended discovery of burials during the course of an excavation, the encountered remains are to be recorded in such a manner as to minimize the loss of scientific data. A burial excavation permit is to be sought, if the archaeologist wishes to continue with the burial excavation/removal.
8. MSSHPO may, as it finds advisable, call for a written proposal from the applicant on the procedure for burial removal and reserves the right to deny the participation of any archaeologist. Such written proposals should address the adequacy of crew size and experience, laboratory and temporary curation facilities, as well as arrangements for long-term curation or reburial of remains.

Rule 12.14.0. Alternative Mitigation

While it could be argued that all mitigation should be “creative,” the intent of this section is to make it clear that there is a nearly limitless range of possibilities to consider non-traditional mitigation approaches beyond the more typical approaches of archaeological data recovery for archaeological properties. Such non-standard, innovative approaches can provide solutions that are better for a project, and community and historic preservation goals, and can supplement or be done in place of, standard mitigation.

For example, instead of excavating a site that has been determined to have an adverse effect from a project, states have done regional models in areas with little or no archaeological site information in order to direct future surveys/research in those areas. A history of a neighborhood can be done to mitigate loss of a property. An article in a professional journal and/or a presentation at a conference could be done instead of a traditional mitigation report. Public education displays of artifacts from archaeological excavations are certainly always good to include in projects, whether as a result of data recovery or other excavations. Combinations of approaches like these should be considered.

A mitigation option could be the development of a local historic preservation plan and/or ordinance. A property could be purchased for preservation; an archaeological site could be preserved by including it in a conservation easement of some kind. Cultural resource management consultants should also consider the creative inclusion of key professionals or institutions with particular expertise, research or academic interests in the data recovery on the resource being mitigated. As an associate Principal Investigator on a project, these key professionals could be an asset in designing the approach, in the recognition of important resource attributes, refining background research, and aid in the preparation of a more meaningful final report. Establishing an exhibit in a local museum and/or creating a web site can be considered for both above and below ground resources in order to illustrate the importance of a historic property in a community’s and/or region’s historical development.

Another option that could be considered for certain situations, is the production of short films showcasing research being conducted and posting those short films on agency websites and on YouTube. Such short films could serve to inform the public and Section 106 Consulting Parties about project research, and enhance public education and public involvement activities. “Virtual artifact curation” is another use of recent technology that might be appropriate in certain instances for public education and public involvement opportunities. As with other mitigation measures discussed in this chapter, these two examples of use of recent technology could be combined with other mitigation approaches as appropriate for a project.

All alternative mitigation must be made in consultation with all involved parties such as the federal agency, SHPO and THPOs.

For more ideas, guidance or examples on alternative mitigations please see:

1. www.achp.gov/archguide
2. I69 regional synthesis
3. Choctaw Study on the MS Coast by Sarah Price
4. “Trade-offs”—damage to one site, but using mitigation to study another site
5. Section 15.0 Public Education and Outreach of this document
6. Podcasts
7. MPB/NPR broadcasts/specials
8. Adding a new Mississippi Mound Trail site
9. Paid internship at SHPO/THPO
10. Funding the Mississippi Archaeological Research Grants program
11. Creating an app
12. Georgia Department of Transportation video links

Source: 36CFR 800.6

Rule 12.15.0. Public Education and Outreach

Archaeological studies carried out in Mississippi need to interpret project results for the public benefit and present those findings to the public. The expected level of education and outreach increases for each successive phase of investigation and depends on project scale, investigation results, project sponsor, and anticipated affects to one or multiple sites. Archaeological consultants are encouraged to adopt new and innovative methods as well as those that are described below.

Public education supplements data recovery as mitigation for the destruction of all or part of a significant archaeological site. The extent of public education and outreach efforts needed to achieve mitigation is based on the extent of the loss of archaeological information and the site’s

importance. Sections 15.1 through 15.4 are intended to provide guidance to consultants who generally must take the “lead” role in all aspects of education and outreach.

Source: Miss. Code § 39-7-3

Rule 12.15.1. Standards for Public Education and Outreach

1. Landowners, towns (both local government and community groups), educators, students, and the general public are likely targets for education and outreach.
2. To the greatest extent possible, education and outreach projects and programs should be conducted in consultation with the local community and other interested parties both during planning and implementation.
3. Education and outreach activities should be coordinated with Native Americans as appropriate.
4. Exceptional sites or special projects may require enhanced education and outreach as a component of the Phase I investigation.
5. Historic archaeological sites may be suited to different types of education and outreach efforts than precontact sites.

Rule 12.15.2. Education and Outreach for Landowners

1. Site information will be provided to the landowner of a site being investigated as it becomes available (including, for example, management summaries, site maps, investigation site reports, non-technical publications, etc.).
2. As appropriate, stewardship information can be provided to landowners to promote long term voluntary site conservation. This may include information on The Archaeological Conservancy (www.americanarchaeology.com), local conservation non-profits, and on other tools and techniques to voluntarily preserve site in perpetuity. Stewardship information on these organizations is available from the MSSHPO or directly through the organizations.
3. A public meeting for site landowners and other interested persons may be appropriate depending on the results of the study.

Rule 12.15.3. Education and Outreach for the Town

1. Local governments, historic preservation commissions, and Certified Local Government commissions (CLG), where they exist as appropriate, should be made aware of the archaeological investigation; anticipated schedule, site tour information; etc. This can be accomplished through written notification, although attending planning commissions, conservation commission, and historic preservation or CLG commission meetings can be very helpful, especially on large projects and during Phase II and III investigations. The NPS manages a database of Certified Local Governments: <https://www.nps.gov/clg/>

2. At the conclusion of the archaeological study, site information should be provided to the Town dependent on the project sponsor's approval. Information may include GIS data sets, and a redacted report of the investigation.
3. A presentation to the planning commission, historic preservation commission, CLG commission, and/or regional planning commission may be appropriate depending on the results of the investigation.

Rule 12.15.4. Recommended Projects and Programs

The following list illustrates some examples of recommended education and outreach projects. Some of these examples incorporate recent advances in technology. The MSSHPO requires that it be consulted during development of scopes of work for Phase II and III education and outreach programs. The MSSHPO can provide guidance and information on a variety of topics, for example, on available exhibit designers and video and digital production firms, interesting web sites that may provide useful ideas, and samples of excellent non-technical publications from Mississippi and other states.

1. Develop and maintain archaeological information on a web site
2. Exhibits (temporary/traveling/or permanent) & Interpretive Signage
3. Illustrated Lectures
4. Non-technical books or brochures
5. Various Mississippi magazine articles or news bulletins, which can also include articles in other popular local, regional or national magazines
6. Videos
7. Press releases
8. Community archaeology projects using adult and youth volunteers or students (examples: field schools, summer camps)
9. Education Curricula
10. TV and radio programs
11. Presentation (PowerPoint) – can later be put on web site
12. CD Rom
13. Virtual archaeology (interactive exhibits, educational games, tours, other programs and site interpretation) on the web or CD Rom
14. Digital publication on web
15. Site Tours

Rule 12. 16.0 Architectural Survey

Rule 12.16.1. Survey Standards

Survey work contracted or managed through the Department of Archives and History (MDAH), Historic Preservation Division (HPD) or through a Certified Local Government (CLG) must meet the following standards to be considered complete:

Survey Forms

The Historic Resources Inventory (HRI) form is intended to be a permanent paper record kept in files maintained by the HPD and should be completed as neatly and accurately as possible. All relevant sections of the form need to be completed in order to be accepted by HPD. Step-by-step instructions for completing the HRI form are available upon request.

HRI forms can be created through the following three specific methods. Consultants must declare in writing which methodology they will be using prior to commencing work.

1. 'Consultant Inventory' a Microsoft Access database provided by HPD. This database will conveniently generate a template for printing Historic Resource Inventory forms (HRI), as well as a .TXT file for incorporation into MDAH's online database. Consultants are strongly encouraged to utilize Consultant Inventory for completion of their survey. Instructions for using 'Consultant Inventory' are available from MDAH upon request.
2. HRI forms provided by HPD. Both hard copies and editable .PDF's are available from the HPD upon request.
3. An equivalent computer-based form that displays the necessary information as delineated in these standards. Consultants who wish to use a non-standardized survey form must have the template pre-approved by the Survey Manager.

Upon completion of the survey, the consultant shall print out HRI forms on single, (front and back) sheets of white, acid free, 8.5x11 inch, 65# cardstock. Use of 'quilted' cardstock is strictly forbidden.

A site or building plan **must** be completed for each resource surveyed. These do not need to be to scale, but should be neatly drawn and show details such as porches and roof types. In addition, the building's relation to the street or surrounding structures **must** be shown. The site plan may be hand-drawn or drawn on a computer.

All sources used for research on each individual building should be entered under the section entitled 'Bibliographic Resources.' This includes Sanborn maps (for all years in which that building appears), City Directories, and the locations of any unusual or unpublished materials. **If Sanborn maps were made for any part of the survey area, the Consultant is expected to use them in researching each building and cite them in the 'Bibliographic Resources' section.**

A printed photograph of the surveyed property **must** be attached to the survey form. **Photos must be printed on the front of the HRI form on photo paper** (see below) **and attached with archival glue, but may not be stapled to the survey form.** Forms submitted without printed photos will not be accepted by the Survey Manager.

Digital Photographs

At least one, clear, sharp digital image must be taken of the main façade of each surveyed property.

Digital images must be six megapixels or greater (2000x3000 pixel image at 300 dpi), and be in compliance with NPS Photo Policy standards for National Register properties and National Historic Landmarks. This information can be found at the following link. <http://www.nps.gov/nR/publications/bulletins/photopolicy/index.htm>

Digital photographs are expected to be high-quality--not blurry, washed-out, or grainy--showing the complete facade of the building or the most significant part of a landscape, structure, or other resource. Digital photographs that do not provide adequate representations of resources will have to be retaken before the final survey will be approved by the Survey Manager.

While one digital photo is required for each structure, additional photos of significant buildings may be necessary as well.

Significant outbuildings, such as carriage houses, kitchen dependencies, etc. should be photographed and surveyed on a separate survey form.

Copies of digital images for each surveyed property must be submitted on a CD or other acceptable forms of portable media such as flash drives.

Each image must be labeled with the address of the property, number followed by street

1. Digital images **must be** in .JPEG or .TIFF formats.
2. Images must be organized in folders according to street name.
3. CD or portable media must be labeled with the Consultant’s name, project name, and date (month/year) of photos. When multiple CDs are needed, discs should be numbered sequentially.

Printing Digital Photographs

All digital photographs are to be printed out on professional quality photo paper in 4x6 format at 300 dpi and attached to the HRI form using archival glue. Photographs stapled to the HRI form will not be accepted by the survey manager.

Photos printed at a professional-quality photo shop are preferred, but consultants who choose to print their own photos may use the following ink and paper combinations, in keeping with NPS photographic standards.

	Paper	Ink
Epson	Premium Gloss Photo Paper Premium Semigloss Photo Paper Premium Luster Photo Paper Premium Semimatte Photo Paper UltraSmooth Fine Art Paper Somerset Velvet	UltraChrome pigmented inks Claria Hi-Definition Inks DuraBrite Ultra Pigmented Inks Picture Mate Inks

	Paper	Ink
	Velvet Fine Art Paper Enhanced Matte Paper PictureMate Photo Paper	
Hewlett-Packard	Premium Plus Photo and Proofing Gloss Premium Plus High Gloss Photo Paper Premium Gloss Photo Paper Premium Soft Gloss Photo Paper Professional Satin Photo Paper	84/85 dye-based inkset Vivera inks (95 & 97 tri-color cartridges)
Kodak	Ultra Photo Premium	No. 10 Pigmented Inks

Maps: The location of all surveyed properties shall be indicated on large-scale maps keyed to the survey sequence number. All maps should feature a prominent north arrow, display consistent symbology, and be clearly readable whether printed in color or grayscale. For properties within towns, copies of city engineering maps or the county property ownership maps are normally sufficient. All other maps must be approved by the Survey Manager before being submitted as the map for the survey area.

Survey Report: A survey report shall be prepared discussing the project objectives, historical research, methodology, and findings. A copy of the report will be submitted in draft form for review by the survey manager, Historic Preservation Division (HPD).

The final survey report (when required) will be arranged in the following order:

- a. *Title Page:* The title page should include the title of the project, including the nature and location of the survey, the author of the report, the principal investigator(s), the project director, the sponsoring institution, association, or agency, and the date the report was prepared.
- b. *Acknowledgment:* The acknowledgment of state assistance should be stated on the title page or on the page immediately following the title page.

- c. *Project Description*: The introduction should summarize the objectives for conducting the intensive survey project, the scope of the project, the agencies involved, and the dates within which the project was accomplished. A map showing the location of the project must be included.
- d. Chapter 1: Survey Background and Methodology. Explanations of how the survey project came about and of the procedures used to execute the work program should be included in this section. Items that should be discussed include the following: which organizations were involved in initiating the survey; who surveyed the area and how the survey was conducted; phases of the survey, including a description of geographic or political areas that contributed to the phasing; types of properties surveyed and the criteria for coverage; and sources that contributed to the research effort. Public education efforts conducted in conjunction with the project should be discussed. The role of any volunteer or advisory groups and the success of their participation should be described.
- e. Chapter 2: Historical Summary or Context. A concise historical, cultural, and geographical background of the survey area should be included in this section. This should answer the following questions: What geographic or geologic features are unique to the area or supported its founding? What spurred the growth and or/development of the survey area? What were important events, whether national or local, that brought about change or decline in the area? What important people lived or did business in the area and why were they important? If the area has distinct geographic sub-areas, how and why did those sections develop and what characteristics defined each section? Which (if any) historically important buildings located within the area are now non-extant?
- f. Chapter 3: Survey Findings. This section shall describe the character and distribution of the properties examined in the course of the survey project. For a typical architectural survey of a city or town, this section would include a description of the styles, types, and periods of buildings, the numbers or proportions of each, their relative architectural importance, and rates of survival. Individually important buildings should be cited. Important historical themes and developments (from Chapter 2) should be addressed and properties associated with those developments should be cited. Local historic district areas should be identified and described, and potential National Register district(s) should be noted. **The survey findings chapter of the survey report will normally not include a list of all surveyed properties. The list of surveyed properties should be attached to the report as one of the Appendices (typically as Appendix C).**
- g. Chapter 4: Survey Products and Documentation. This chapter must contain a description of the products of the survey (such as Historic Resources Inventory Forms, maps, historic context reports, photographic materials, and informational files) and any related documentation (including planning documents, designation reports, and bibliographies).
- h. Chapter 5: Recommendations for Further Research, Documentation, and Registration. This chapter should identify additional research and survey work that should be done, and should include recommendations for National Register nominations, Historic American Buildings Survey recordation, potential National Historic Landmark designation, and other documentation and registration proposals. These recommendations should be prioritized.

- i. Chapter 6: Recommendations for Resource Preservation. This chapter should begin with an account of the status of preservation interest and activity in the survey area or related to the surveyed properties up to the present time. It should address threats to the resources and make recommendations for mitigating those threats. This chapter should also make recommendations relating to the actions or policies of local governments, state or federal agencies, non-profit organizations, business firms, and other parties, with regard to the protection, preservation, development, or interpretation of historic resources in the survey area. Recommendations about educational or promotional activities may also be included.
- j. Appendices. The following documents will normally be attached as appendices:
 - i. A copy of the work program.
 - ii. A list of any surveyed properties that are already listed on the National Register.
 - iii. A comprehensive list of all surveyed properties, arranged alphabetically and numerically by street address and keyed to the survey map. This list should only include addresses, not descriptions of each building.

Survey Preliminary Deadline: If the survey project involves a National Register phase, all survey material, including completed inventory forms, contact sheets and photo indices, and maps, must be submitted for review and comment to the Survey Manager at least one month before HPD's due date for preliminary review of National Register nominations. This early deadline will allow the Survey Manager to review the survey and suggest corrections before the National Register nomination is completed and will ensure high-quality project materials.

Public Meeting: The HPD requires that the consultant meet with interested citizens and local officials at the beginning of any survey project to explain the purpose of the survey. A representative of the HPD, either the Survey Manager or Regional CLG Coordinator, may also be present and available to handle questions and comments. If the project includes a National Register phase, HPD **requires** at least one public meeting during the nomination phase of the project, but this meeting will be set up by MDAH's National Register coordinator. Consultants are also required to present completed National Register nominations to the scheduled meeting of the Mississippi National Register Board and include a prepared PowerPoint presentation of about 10 minutes summarizing the significance and character of the proposed district.

Source: Miss. Code 39-7-4

Rule 12.16.2. Survey Inclusion Guidelines

Surveys of historic properties are necessarily selective to some degree or another. The specific criteria for what should be included in a survey will vary somewhat from project to project depending on the purpose of the survey and the area being surveyed. Nonetheless, certain general guideline will be applicable to almost all historic property surveys conducted under the supervision of the Mississippi Department of Archives and History. Here follows a list of the kinds of properties that should normally be recorded on a Historic Resources Inventory form.

Properties Predating 1817

The survey should record all identified extant buildings regardless of condition or alterations, and should record the sites, when known, of all pre-1817 buildings if there is any likelihood of archaeological remains.

Properties Dating from 1817 to 1865

The survey should record all extant buildings and other structures believed to date to this period, unless so altered that the architectural character is no longer evident at all. Sites should be identified for the most important non-extant buildings (such as major plantation houses, courthouses, and other properties of special architectural or historical interest). The sites of notable Civil War military activity should also be identified. While not required, documentation regarding the appearance of non-extant antebellum buildings would be welcome, especially photographs.

All Other Properties over 50 Years Old

The survey should record all extant properties which have retained their architectural character, and major buildings that have been substantially altered. Sites should only be identified for the most important non-extant buildings. While not required, pictorial documentation about the most important non-extant buildings would be welcomed. All extant properties from this period which are within the boundaries of a proposed historic district should be recorded. All properties specifically associated with military activity during the Second World War should be fully recorded.

Properties Less Than 50 Years Old

1. Buildings and other structures of exceptional architectural or historical significance should be fully recorded.
2. Properties located within a proposed historic district but which do not contribute to its historic significance should be photographed and very briefly described on a survey form, so that they can be accounted for in the district inventory.
3. Mississippi has a number of buildings associated with the Civil Rights Movement and with music history that are either less than 50 years old or have been substantially remodeled in the last 50 years. Oral histories and local historians are important sources to highlight buildings or districts which do not have significant architectural merit but that might have played a significant role in historic events. Any buildings associated in any way with the Civil Rights Movement or with music history, regardless of age or architectural merit, should be surveyed and sources of documentation should be cited.

Objects of Artistic Interest

The survey should record any freestanding object of artistic or historical interest located within the survey area. In the case of an individual object (such as a statue or fountain), a single form should be prepared for each object. In the case of a group of similar or identical objects (such as

historic light posts), a single survey form should be prepared for the whole group, with an attached sketch map locating each object.

Rule 12.16.3. Instructions for Completing the Mississippi Historic Resources Inventory Form

General Instructions: The inventory form is intended to be a permanent record kept in the files of the Division of Historic Preservation. Please be sure that all information is as complete and accurate as possible. Entries should be typed or neatly printed. If an item of information is not known, enter "unknown" or leave it blank; if the item is not applicable to the inventoried resource, enter "N/A."

Photographs: One clear, sharp 4" x 6" black-and-white photograph showing the main facade (if for a building or other structure) or a general view (if there is not one principal building on the property) should be attached to the lower left-hand corner of the front of the inventory form with archivally stable glue. **Do not use staples or clips to attach photos.** Any additional photos should be mounted on a sheet of white bond paper with archivally stable glue, or inserted into acid-free photo sleeves and clipped to the inventory form.

Maps: Normally, Historic Resource Inventory forms will be used in conjunction with a map or maps upon which the survey sequence number (block #14) of each inventoried property will be marked. Rural properties should be documented on an 8½ x 11 photocopy of the pertinent part of the U.S. Geological Survey (USGS) quadrangle map, with the location of the property highlighted or circled in color. Properties in towns and cities should be shown on larger scale maps or, at a minimum, sketch maps. For surveys funded wholly or partially by MDAH, the map requirements will be stated in the survey project agreement or instructions. For other survey activities, contact the Survey and Inventory Manager at the Division of Historic Preservation, Mississippi Department of Archives and History.

Block-by-block instructions for the Historic Resources Inventory form:

1.a. Property name, historic: Enter the name by which the property was first known or best-known historically. For a building without some other historic name, identify it by the name of the first or best-known occupant. If a newer building has the same name, put "old" or "former" in parentheses before the name. If no historic name is known for the property, leave this space black.

EXAMPLES: John W. Jones House; (Old) First National Bank

1.b. Property name, common: Enter the name(s) by which the property is most commonly known today, or write "same" if the historic name is still used. Other names can be given in parentheses. If no name is known, identify the property by functional type: house, commercial building, etc.

2. Property address/descriptive location: For properties located in towns, give the street address of the property. For properties which have only rural route numbers, describe the location by giving the name of the rural community (if any), the distance and direction from the nearest town, and the name(s) or number(s) of the nearest road(s).

EXAMPLE: One mile west of Smithville on Hwy 4 and one-half mile south on County Road 44.

3. Legal description (and acreage, if required): For properties located in towns, give the lot and block designation, as shown on the deed or tax assessor's maps. For properties located in rural areas, give the surveyed location as shown on the deed, including section, township and range.

EXAMPLE: Lot 2 and south 25 feet of lot 4, Block 6, Doe's Addition.

EXAMPLE: NW $\frac{1}{4}$, NE $\frac{1}{4}$, NE $\frac{1}{4}$, Section 17, Township 6S, Range 21E.

Ordinarily, this information will be used only for locational purposes. Therefore, it is not necessary to include the complete text of a long, complex legal description unless the inventory form is intended to provide information to be used in an individual National Register nomination, in which case a full legal description of the specific area to be nominated should be given here. If the description is too long to fit in the area provided, include it on an attached sheet titled "Legal description" and reference the sheet in the box by entering "see continuation sheet."

If the inventory form is intended to be the basis for an individual National Register nomination, the acreage of the land area to be nominated is also required. For very small areas, such as an individual building, an acreage estimate of "less than one acre" is sufficient. For properties within proposed historic districts, the acreage is not needed.

4. Former/historic use(s): Enter the original and/or significant historic use(s) of the inventoried property: residence, church, retail store, bridge, cemetery, warehouse, etc.

5. Present use(s): Enter the present use(s) of the property. If the property is not being used, enter "vacant," "ruins," or other description, as appropriate. For sites, enter the current use of the land: park, cultivated farmland, forest, etc.

6. Architect: Enter the name of the designer (architect, engineer, landscape architect, etc.) if there was one, and mark whether this information is documented or attributed. Give the source for this information in block #25. If there was no designer, leave this block blank.

7. Builder/Contractor: Give the name of the builder(s) or contractor(s), if known.

8. Brief description: Give a brief description of the resource, to include the following information:

For a building:

- a. Number of stories
- b. Plan shape (I-plan, H-plan, rectangular, etc.) or vernacular building form (dogtrot, shotgun, etc.)
- c. Exterior wall materials (clapboard, brick, etc.)
- d. Roof shape (gable, hip, etc.) and materials (tin, asphalt shingles, etc.)
- e. Chimney placement (interior, exterior, center) and number

- f. Number and placement of windows and exterior doors on each floor of the main facade(s)
- g. Porch type (wrap-around, portico, stoop, etc.) and placement (e.g., north side)
- h. Types of windows (4/4 wooden double-hung-sash) and doors (3-light, 2-panel wood door)
- i. Any other notable feature(s)

EXAMPLE: A two-story brick I-house with gable roof and end exterior chimneys. Five 2/2 double-hung-sash windows on second floor over four identical windows and centered 2-panel door on first floor. Full-width, single-story gallery with shed roof resting on boxed wood columns. Very intact.

For a structure or object:

- a. Type or purpose
- b. Materials
- c. Size
- d. Any other notable feature(s)

EXAMPLE: Iron, single-span, Warren-truss bridge with wood decking. Roadway is 15' wide and 65' long.

For a landscape feature:

- a. Acreage or dimensions
- b. Vegetation and use
- c. How enclosed or bounded
- d. Any other notable feature(s)

EXAMPLE: 200' x 200' cemetery surrounded by chainlink fence. Well-maintained. Several markers date to the 1880s.

Note: If the resource is described in greater detail on an attached sheet or in another referenced document, that description may be cited here instead. In this case, a copy of the referenced document should be attached.

9. Outbuildings or secondary elements: Identify any outbuildings or other structures or notable landscape features associated with the inventoried resource. For a farmstead, list the buildings that it comprises. Attach another inventory form for each structure that has particular architectural or historical interest (see instructions for block #14), and note attachment(s) in this block.

10. County: Enter the name of the county in which the resource is located.

11. City or town: Enter the name of the city or town in which the property is located. If the property is in a rural area, enter the name of the nearest city, town, or post office in the same county and mark the "vicinity of" box.

12. Owner's name and address: If the information is required or is conveniently available, give the name and address of the current owner of the resource. If it has more than one owner, write "multiple" and list the owners in block #24 or continue on another sheet of paper.

This information is not required in all cases. For example, if the property is to be included within a district of over 50 buildings, the name of each property owner is not needed. The names of owners of sites of non-extant properties are not needed. In addition, if the surveyed property is not intended to be nominated to the National Register, ownership information is not necessary. However, if it is known to be owned by a public entity such as a governmental or quasi-public agency, enter the name here.

13. Was interior surveyed? If the resource is a building or enclosed structure, indicate whether you examined the interior by writing "yes," "no," "first story only," "lobby only," etc. If the resource has no accessible interior space, enter "N/A."

14. Survey sequence number: When more than one resource is inventoried as part of a survey, each form should be given a sequence number. Secondary structures, such as garages or barns, should be given the same sequence number as the associated major resource, with the addition of a suffix letter. This sequence number may be used to show location on any associated maps.

EXAMPLE: A house might have sequence number 23. Its carriage house, if inventoried, would be numbered 23B. The house itself is understood to be 23A.

15. USGS quadrangle map: Ordinarily field surveyors will only use this block when conducting surveys of rural areas. In the case of rural surveys using USGS maps, enter the name of the map which shows the location of the inventoried resource. (If a 15-minute series map is used, please indicate "15-min." following the name. Otherwise, the map is assumed to be in the 7½-minute series). Be sure to mark the location of the property on the map, numbered with the property's survey sequence number. For urban surveys, leave this block blank unless instructed otherwise by the Survey and Inventory Manager.

16. UTM reference: Leave this block blank unless instructed otherwise by the Survey and Inventory Manager.

17. Date of construction: Enter the date(s) of construction and mark whether this is estimated or documented. If it is documented, state the source in block #25. If estimated, state "circa" or "c." before the date.

18. Integrity: In pencil, mark the appropriate box using the following standards for buildings, structures, and objects:

Very intact: The resource has had few or no changes since its creation and is being well-maintained.

Some changes: The resource has had some noticeable changes since its creation, but still retains much of its original appearance.

Extensive changes: The resource has had many changes and is significantly altered from its original appearance.

Deteriorated: The resource is standing but is not maintained or not structurally sound.

Ruins: Only remnants of the resource remain visible above ground.

No visible remains: No above-ground remains are visible, either because the site has been cleared or because possible extent visible remains have been obscured.

Note: For complexes, sites, and landscape features, check the box which seems most appropriate, or enter "N/A" at the top of the block.

19. Dates of changes, if any: Identify and give the dates of any major changes that have been made to the resource either historically or in the more recent past.

Moved: The resource has been moved from its original site

Enlarged/altered: The resource has had additions or its original style has been altered in some way (for instance, an addition of a rear wing on a house)

Artificial siding: The building has siding that is not original or not a replication of the original siding (i.e., vinyl siding over clapboards, or Masonite over asbestos shingles)

Replaced windows/doors: The windows or doors (exterior) have been replaced

Enclosed/altered porch: The porch has been either wholly or partially enclosed or has been altered in some way (for example, the original wood deck has been replaced with an on-grade concrete slab).

Storefront alterations: The original storefront has been replaced or altered with some other materials or style.

20. Architectural character or style: If the building has an identifiable architectural character or style, enter it here. If not, leave this block blank. If you are not sure, enter the tentative answer lightly in pencil, or consult the Survey and Inventory Manager.

21-22. Leave blank unless instructed otherwise.

23. Historical information: Use this block to provide general historical information about the property or to explain any historical or architectural importance. Sources for this information, such as books, diaries, or interviews, should be listed in block #25.

EXAMPLES:

1. This was the home of U.S Senator John D. Doe from 1890 until his death in 1920.
2. This building served as the first courthouse of Brigg County from 1840 to 1856.
3. This house is an exceptionally intact example of a dogtrot log house, one of very few remaining in the country.
4. This house is typical of the houses built in the First Street neighborhood during the early period of the town and thus contributes to the character of the neighborhood.

5. This building is an exceptionally accomplished example of Greek Revival design.
6. Although it has been greatly altered, it is the only surviving ante-bellum commercial building in the town.
7. First owned by J.W. Smith (?), an attorney. Purchased in 1895 by J.G. Doe, owner of Doe Livery Stable. Doe died in 1920. His wife Jane resided here until her death in 1930, when the house was inherited by their son J.L. Doe. His daughter Mary Doe Jones acquired the house in 1965.
8. Henderson's Dry Goods Store was located here from 1880 to 1910, when the building became a feed store. It has had a variety of commercial uses in recent years.

24. Additional remarks or continuation of other sections: Use this block to continue information from other blocks or to add relevant remarks that do not fit anywhere else.

25. Sources of information: Identify the sources of any specific information about the property, including interviews (give name of informant and date of interview), newspaper articles, and books. Also mention sources of information on or at the property, such as cornerstones or historical markers.

26. Sketch of building plan or site plan: Sketch a plan of the building, showing building shape, windows, chimneys, and exterior doors. If interior was surveyed, include interior plan. If relevant, sketch the site, showing distance and direction to major roads, positions of outbuildings, and a north arrow. A copy of a Sanborn map that depicts the property may be attached if one is available.

27. Photographer or photo source: Enter the name of the person(s) who took the attached photograph(s). If the negatives for the photographs are to be kept in some location other than the MDAH offices, give the location of these negatives.

28. Photo roll and frame number(s): Enter the roll and frame number for the photographs. If the negatives are to be kept at the MDAH offices, consult with the Survey and Inventory Manager before assigning roll numbers. If the negatives are to be stored in some other location, enter the numbers assigned to the rolls at that location.

29. Photo date: Enter the date the photographs were taken.

30. Inventory form completed by: Give your name and, if applicable, the organization for whom you are completing the survey or inventory form.

31. Survey project name: If the inventory is part of a survey project, give the project's name. If not, leave this block blank.

32. Date form completed: Give the date the inventory information on the form was compiled.

33. Evaluation: Leave blank unless instructed otherwise. The National Park Service requires that all properties identified in a fully documented survey be evaluated for eligibility for listing in the National Register of Historic Places. In order to insure consistency in the evaluation of historic resources, this evaluation will normally be completed by MDAH staff. In certain cases, qualified field surveyors may be authorized to conduct evaluations.

Any questions about the use of the Historic Resources Inventory form or about the procedures for conducting an historic resources survey should be directed to the Survey and Inventory Manager at the Division of Historic Preservation.

Rule 12.17.0. Mississippi Landmark Permits: Procedures for Implementation of the Antiquities Law of Mississippi

Section 1 – The Board of Trustees

Section 39-7-5 of the Antiquities Law of Mississippi assigns sole responsibility for administration of the Antiquities Law to the Board of Trustees of the Mississippi Department of Archives and History (MDAH). In administering the Antiquities Law, the Board of Trustees has the authority to issue permits for public construction, public improvement of any nature, or the transfer of public property to private ownership of designated Mississippi Landmark properties. The Board also has the authority to designate public properties as Mississippi Landmarks. In administering the Antiquities Law, the Board will consider the recommendations of MDAH staff and written comments from public property owners and members of the public.

Section 2 – Designation of Mississippi Landmarks

Section 39-7-11 designates publicly owned archaeological sites as Mississippi Landmarks and authorizes the Board to designate publicly owned sites of historical or architectural significance as Mississippi Landmarks with or without the consent of the owner(s). Section 39-7-13 authorizes the Board to designate privately owned sites of historical or architectural significance as Mississippi Landmarks with the written consent of the owner(s).

Section 3 – Criteria for Designation

Mississippi Landmarks are recognized as the state’s most important historic and cultural resources. They are sites, objects, buildings, artifacts, implements, and locations that possess exceptional value or quality in illustrating or interpreting the history of the State of Mississippi. In considering the designation of potential Mississippi Landmarks, the resource(s) must be listed in or eligible for listing in the National Register of Historic Places (NRHP). Determinations of eligibility shall be based on recommendations by MDAH staff.

Of those eligible resources, the Board will give priority to properties:

1. individually listed in or eligible for listing in the NRHP;
2. associated with courthouses or schools;
3. located within Certified Local Government communities;
4. whose designation is supported by the property owner and/or local preservation commission.

While the Board will consider the above priorities for Mississippi Landmark designation, the Board has the authority to designate any eligible publicly owned property, with or without the consent of the owner(s).

For public campuses, including schools, universities, public health facilities and other similar properties, the Board encourages the adoption of *Memoranda of Agreement* with the governing public agencies to identify individual resources as contributing and non-contributing and to establish priorities for preservation and permit procedures.

Section 4 – Consideration and Designation Process

When a Mississippi Landmark designation request is made by the property owner, MDAH staff shall prepare a significance report developed in accordance with National Register of Historic Places criteria. The report shall include a written statement on the boundaries of the proposed landmark property and shall list all sites, objects, buildings, artifacts, implements, and/or locations to be included in the proposed landmark designation.

If the property meets the criteria for designation, the Board will consider the designation at the next regularly scheduled, quarterly Board meeting. However, if expeditious action is required for contractual, security, or economic reasons, the Board may place the consideration on the agenda of the next regularly scheduled monthly teleconference.

Upon consideration of a public property for designation, MDAH shall solicit written, public comments for a period of at least thirty days following publication of a legal notice. Legal notice of the proposed designation shall be published in the newspaper of record associated with the local property and on the MDAH website. Proof of publication shall be provided prior to action by the Board.

At the conclusion of the public comment period, the Board of Trustees will consider the proposed designation at the ensuing quarterly meeting. However, if expeditious action is required for contractual, security, or economic reasons—and provided no opposition is expressed during the public comment period—the Board may act on the designation prior to the next quarterly meeting. For private properties in which designation is by owner request, the Board may elect to proceed with designation without public comment.

The Board may also designate eligible publicly owned properties when designation is not requested by the owner. When considering such a designation, MDAH will contact the property owner and request written comments. If a request is received for the demolition of a publicly owned property, the public owner may also be asked to provide additional information, including a structural report prepared by a qualified structural engineer with experience in evaluating historic structures. For public properties located in Certified Local Government communities, the chair of the local preservation commission will also be asked to provide written comments. Based on the comments and additional documentation received, the Board president, in

consultation with MDAH staff, will determine if the property will be placed before the Board for consideration as a Mississippi Landmark. Upon presentation to the Board, the consideration and designation process will be the same as described above.

Once a property is designated a Mississippi Landmark, MDAH shall inform the property owners in writing and shall prepare and execute a *Certificate of Designation* to be recorded in the deed records of the county in which the property exists.

Section 5 – Notices of Intent and Permits for Designated Mississippi

Landmark Properties

Restoration, renovation, significant repairs or other alterations of a Mississippi Landmark property may be conducted only pursuant to a permit approved by the Board of Trustees. Work affecting Mississippi Landmark archaeological sites also requires a Mississippi Landmark permit.

For all projects involving designated Mississippi Landmark properties, including demolition or significant alteration, the owner(s) must submit a *Notice of Intent* to MDAH. The *Notice of Intent* must include appropriate supporting documentation, including plans and specifications, maps, photographs, etc., and shall be submitted at least one month prior to the next regularly scheduled Board meeting. The *Notice of Intent* should include a detailed description of the proposed project, including photographs, plans and/or specifications, as appropriate. *Notices of Intent* shall be submitted in the early stages of planning and always prior to the letting of bids for public construction or public improvement of any nature, in accordance with Section 39-7-22.

Upon receipt of a *Notice of Intent*, proposed project(s) will be reviewed by MDAH staff to determine if the project is in accordance with the Secretary of the Interior's *Standards for Rehabilitation*. Upon review, a staff committee will consider proposed project(s) and make recommendations for approval, approval with conditions, or denial of a permit. The staff review committee shall meet monthly and may include project professionals in the meeting, as well as a representative from the Bureau of Building, Real Property and Grounds.

For projects that do not involve demolition or significant alteration of a designated Mississippi Landmark property and consist of routine or minor activities consistent with the Secretary of the Interior's *Standards for Rehabilitation*, as outlined below, a resolution passed by the Board will authorize approval of the projects by the staff review committee. For these projects, MDAH staff may proceed to issue a permit following staff review committee approval. A list of the permitted, routine projects shall be provided to the Board for documentation at the following Board meeting.

The following are considered to be routine and/or minor activities consistent with the Secretary of the Interior's Standards for Rehabilitation:

1. Appropriate removal of insignificant or incompatible minor additions or

2. alterations;
3. Repair or selective in-kind replacement of siding materials;
4. Repair or in-kind replacement of roofing, coping, gutters and downspouts;
5. Selective in-kind or appropriate replacement of exterior and interior lighting fixtures;
6. Repair or selective in-kind replacement of original and/or appropriate flooring materials;
7. Repair or selective in-kind replacement of interior and exterior finishes, including but not limited to structural finish materials (i.e. stucco, plaster, clapboard, etc.), paint, and/or stain;
8. Repair or selective in-kind replacement of original and/or appropriate windows or doors;
9. Heating Ventilation and Air Conditioning equipment, if suitably screened or unobtrusive to the structures original building materials or its aesthetic surroundings;
10. Plumbing or Exhaust Vents, if suitably screened or unobtrusive to the structures original building materials or its aesthetic surroundings;
11. In-kind repair or replacement of woodwork, metalwork, and other trim;
12. Selective brick pointing and cleaning of building exteriors, except by sandblasting or other abrasive methods;
13. Pruning & maintenance of limbs not more than 6 inches in diameter;
14. Removal of trees not more than 6 inches in diameter;
15. In-kind repair or replacement of sidewalks and parking surfaces;
16. In-kind repair or selective replacement of fencing;
17. Other routine, minor, and compatible work consistent with the above.

All permits issued by the Board are valid for one year from the issue date of the permit. At the completion of the permitted project, the owner must submit documentation, including photographs, of the permitted activity.

Should the owner of a designated Mississippi Landmark property wish to appeal the conditions of a permit or a decision by the Board involving a designated Mississippi Landmark property, the owner shall provide the appeal in writing. Following review and recommendation by MDAH staff, the appeal will be considered at the next regularly scheduled quarterly Board meeting. However, if expeditious action is required for contractual, security, or economic reasons, the Board may place the consideration on the agenda of the next regularly scheduled monthly teleconference.

Section 6 – Notices of Intent for Undesignated Public Properties

Section 39-7-22 requires that a *Notice of Intent* should be submitted “in the early stages of planning and always prior to the letting of bids for public construction, public improvement of any nature, or transfer of public property to private ownership by state agencies,” for determination of possible effects to potential Mississippi Landmarks. The *Notice of Intent* must

be completed and submitted with appropriate supporting documentation, including but not limited to plans and specifications, maps, photographs, etc.

If, upon review, MDAH staff determines that a property does not meet the criteria for designation as a Mississippi Landmark, notification will be provided to the applicant that the project may proceed without further review.

If, upon review, MDAH staff determines that a property does not currently meet the criteria for Mississippi Landmark designation, due to the original age of construction or other factors that may in the future cause the structure to become eligible, MDAH staff shall notify the applicant that the project is acceptable but that the property should not be demolished or significantly altered in the future without submitting a *Notice of Intent* to MDAH for review and approval.

Section 7 – Removal of Designation

Requests for the removal of a Mississippi Landmark designation may be submitted in writing to MDAH by the property owner and/or initiated by MDAH. The owner (or MDAH, as appropriate) shall publish a notice soliciting written public comments for a period of thirty days from the date of the notice. Legal notice of the proposed removal of designation shall be published in the newspaper of record associated with the local property and on the MDAH website. Proof of publication shall be provided prior to action by the Board. Following the public comment period and upon review by MDAH staff, the request to remove the designation will be placed on the agenda of the next quarterly Board meeting.

Section 8 – Burial Excavation Permits

In the event that any Native American burials are encountered during any project, a permit is required prior to removal or excavation. If on private property, removal or excavation also requires the written permission of the landowner(s). No prehistoric or historic Native American burial excavation permits will be issued unless the excavation is performed by or supervised by a professional archaeologist and a physical anthropologist. If the burial(s) in question are reasonably expected to be of a known, federally recognized Tribe, MDAH shall consult with tribal authorities prior to the issuance of a permit.

Permits to excavate burials will not be issued unless there is an immediate threat to the integrity of the burial(s) through vandalism, natural forces, or unavoidable development. A burial is understood to include those items which were interred with the remains (please see <http://www.mdah.ms.gov/new/preserve/archaeology/permits/>).

Section 9 – Temporary Restraining Orders

When MDAH has confirmed that work has been initiated on a designated

Mississippi Landmark property, or potentially eligible publicly owned property, prior to the issuance of a permit, MDAH shall immediately contact the owner to request that the work is

halted until a *Notice of Intent* form is submitted in accordance with the above procedures. If the owner refuses to cease operations or follow the permit process, MDAH may seek a temporary restraining order through the Attorney General's Office.

Section 10 – Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act and Preservation Tax Incentive Review Procedures

For projects involving designated Mississippi Landmark properties also under review in accordance with Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act, the federal review process will take precedence over the Mississippi Landmark review. However, the president of the Board, in consultation with the director, may elect to require that a Mississippi Landmark permit be obtained in addition to the Section 106 review. Mississippi Landmark permits are always required for prehistoric or historic American Indian or aboriginal burials.

For projects involving designated Mississippi Landmark properties also under review in accordance with the federal or state preservation tax incentives programs, the tax incentives review process will take precedence over the Mississippi Landmark review. However, the president of the Board, in consultation with the director, may elect to require that a Mississippi Landmark permit be obtained in addition to the tax review process.

Rule 12.18.0. Citizen's Guide to Reporting an Archaeological Site

Many of the sites recorded in the Mississippi State Site File were submitted by the public. Site locations are exempt from disclosure from the Freedom of Information Act (FOIA) and recorded site locations can only be shared with landowners or professional archaeologists, so any site that you record will not be in the public record.

Recording an archaeological site preserves a piece of Mississippi history. If you have an artifact collection from a location within the state, recording the location with a state site number links those artifacts to that location that may help future research and increases their research value.

Members of the public and landowners who want to record an archaeological site may download a site form at: <http://mdah.ms.gov/new/preserve/archaeology/archaeological-survey/>

A staff archaeologist can assist you with recording your site. Just email us at ifoundasite@mdah.ms.us or call us at 601-576-6940 and ask to speak with an archaeologist.

Source: Miss. Code 39-7-3

Appendix A. Linear Resources

Linear resources are a collection of features that are substantially longer than they are wide and usually are in the form of monuments usually associated with transportation, communication, and power networks. They include roads, trails, railroads, ships, shipwrecks, flumes, canals, telegraph lines, power lines, and power poles. The linear shape of these sites presents unique

problems when being addressed in the field and for their significance. Until recently this type of site has been largely ignored within the state of Mississippi. Our main goal is to raise awareness of these resources and provide information about how to approach their recordation and assess the significance of them.

Background research is essential to understanding the significance of the Linear Resource and developing an approach to dealing with the site in the field. Research should minimally include resources such as archaeological site files, Google Earth, GLO maps, USGS Maps, Earth Resources Data Center, National Register of Historic Places, published county histories, published water histories, and published power histories. The research conducted should be sufficient enough to identify potential resources that may be present and to provide a context for each resource. Additional research may require the use of secondary sources of data. These secondary sources should be used when a project area has a potential linear resource, especially if the project is likely to affect the site. Secondary sources include historical USGS maps, Sanborn fire insurance company maps, historical aerial photographs, land patent information, old county highway maps, and the Mississippi Department of Transportation. Other sources of information such as online digital historic newspaper databases, military maps, railroad company maps, GLO surveyor notes, utility company maps, and direct oral history interviews may need to be used to answer specific questions raised during field work.

When recording a linear site basic dimensions (or range of dimensions) of the main linear feature as it appears within your project area (railroad berm, roadbed, canal ditch, etc.) should be described in detail. These dimensions include the top width, the bottom width, the height or depth of the feature, and the length of the segment recorded. It should also be indicated how this dimension was determined (measured with a tape, estimated, etc.).

Determining if a feature or artifacts are associated with a linear site can be difficult. Artifacts and features of a linear site fall into two categories: functionally or spatially associated with the site. Functionally associated features/artifacts are things that exist solely because they serve a function of the linear site. These features/artifacts would not exist without the presence of the site. Headgates, flumes, bridges, railroad depots, trestles, water towers, rest areas, and right-of-way fences are just a few examples of functionally associated features. If these functionally associated features merit an architectural survey form, the form should be filled out and referenced within the archaeological report. That is to say if you have a railroad depot that is still standing, an architectural form would still need to be filled out and turned in with the final report; because the depot would still be a feature of the archaeological site it shall be addressed and cross referenced as such.

Artifacts/features of the linear site should also be spatially associated with the main feature of the linear site. For example trash is often disposed of alongside a road or a railroad. Isolated artifacts or small assemblages of artifacts that would not otherwise merit recordation as a site and which are closely spatially associated with a road or railroad should be recorded as artifacts

associated with the resource. These small scatters of artifacts would be an associated feature of the linear site and should be treated as such.

There is some variability within these categories. There may be towns, trash dumps, construction camps, etc. close to the site. If the town, trash dump, etc. could be considered a site in and of itself, it should be treated as such. Also, if the linear site happens to cut through a site of a different time period, the linear site and the unrelated site should be considered two different sites. For example, if you have a major historic road that bisects a mound complex, the mound complex and the historic road would be considered two different sites. The reason the historic road and mound complex would not be considered a multi-component site in this case is because the historic road (or linear site) is not solely contained within the same site boundaries as the mound complex. That is to say the historic road has radically different site boundaries than the mound complex. Therefore the historic road, while it should be considered a site, is also considered an impact agent of the mound complex.

When it comes to recording the details of associated features (headgates, culverts, etc.) it is important to have the appropriate level of detail for the project. This can be established by providing a narrative, map and GPS locations, and photographs of the overall main site and each of the associated features so that an agency can determine where the feature is relative to the overall site, what the feature is, and what the current condition of the feature is. However, you do not need to provide detailed measurements for every associated feature, unless these measurements are necessary for distinguishing between the individual features. What is needed is a good picture, a good location, supplemented with enough measurements to convey scale and whatever else is not clearly seen in pictures or is unique or key to the construction of the feature. In other words, it is not necessary to measure every dimension of a culvert and associated wing walls, but it may be necessary to distinguish between culverts with a 12 inch diameter and culverts of a 30 inch diameter. When multiple redundant features (culverts, small trestles, etc.) are present, it is generally sufficient to describe one and show the location of others.

While Mississippi does require a 1:24,000 scale map on our site cards, this map is not sufficient enough on its own to relay information about features that may have been found during survey. Therefore, we would like to see a detail map showing the features and their overall relationship to the recorded segment of the linear site. During survey features should be assigned a feature number and used to cross reference descriptions, photographs and map locations. Features that should be mapped in detail include (but are not limited to) roadbeds, borrow ditches, culverts, bridges, headgates, flumes, poles, pole stumps, and artifact concentrations.

Once your site has been recorded and mapped, you still need to consider the eligibility of it. In Mississippi the majority of our linear resources have been written off as insignificant because they do not meet the requirements of Criterion D of the National Register of Historic Places; which makes sites eligible to the NRHP because they have yielded or may be likely to yield

information important to history or prehistory. While most archaeologists concentrate on Criterion D, linear sites can be eligible under criteria A, B, C and D.

In order to be considered significant, trails and transportation sites must have, or have the potential to have a significant impact upon the interpretation of important historical events or patterns, people, and architectural/engineering types associated with the trail or transportation route. Secondly, the information must have cast, or have the potential to cast, significant light upon important scientific or scholarly concepts, ideas, questions, hypothesis, theories, or models tied to important patterns and themes in local, state, or national history.

Trails and transportation routes can be eligible under Criterion A. Criterion A states that a site that is eligible if it is “associated with events that have made a significant contribution to the broad patterns of our history.” Trails and transportation routes can help interpret or provide significant information about historical events important to national cultural identities, such as ethnic groups or nationalities or social groups. A good example of this in Mississippi would be the Choctaw Trail of Tears, where after the Treaty of Dancing Rabbit Creek ceded land in Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana to the United States nearly 17,000 Choctaws moved to Oklahoma. Historic trails might also contain information that helps interpret or provide significant information about economic or political developments that are important in local, state, or national history. For example, trails play an important role in understanding the settlement and incorporation of the frontier. Historic trails can also address migration and other historically important demographic events and processes in local, state, and national population history. The material expression of these historic routes often includes archaeological and other material remains that contain significant information capable of helping to interpret and answer important scholarly and scientific questions about settlement patterns in Mississippi.

Historic trails and transportation routes may also help address research issues surrounding the formation of landscapes or episodes of environmental change that are significant to local, state, or national history. Some key landscape research questions include: the evolution of settlement patterns associated with the route (for example the evolution of towns and communities that develop along the route of a railroad); the evolution of vegetation patterns associated with the route (things like deforestation from timber cutting); the evolution of landforms associated with transportation routes; and the evolution of ethnic and cultural landscapes expressing cultural identities associated with the routes.

While these concepts can apply to trails, roads, and railroads, roads and railroads can also be considered eligible under Criterion C. Criterion C specifies that a site should “embody the distinctive characteristics of a type, period, or method of construction, or that represent the work of a master, or that possess high artistic values, or that represent a significant and distinguishable entity whose components may lack individual distinction.” For a railroad to be considered eligible under Criterion C, it is necessary to examine things like rolling stock (or wheeled vehicles) and the railroad beds. For rolling stock (locomotives, train cars, etc.) to be eligible

under Criterion C they would need to specifically embody the distinctive design characteristics of a technology. They would also need to retain these distinctive design characteristics so that the integrity of the design and workmanship are still present.

Railroad grades are the roadbed foundations that allowed movement of the rolling stock. In most cases, grades were constructed by depositing ballast of crushed rock or earth to prepare a level, dry base for the ties. Some grades may have been cut into slopes. After use, rails were usually removed and ties were often salvaged by local residents for reuse. Abandoned railroad grades have often been turned into road beds. To be eligible under Criterion C these abandoned railroad grades need to be well preserved enough to convey the design and workmanship of the method of construction.

Trestles are structures that allow the rolling stock cross streams, drainages, and depressions while keeping the incline of the railroad grade at a gentle incline. Trestles are often significant for their method and type of construction and, therefore, might be eligible under Criterion C. Mississippi has numerous railroads ranging from small logging “dummy” lines that made an impact on the local logging industry to major railroads like the Illinois Central Railroad which had a major impact on our nation’s history.

Historic roads are another major group of linear sites that are present within the state of Mississippi. Often times these historic roads are ignored, or casually mentioned and not assigned a site number. Historic roads, like railroads, trails, and other methods of transportation can be eligible under Criterion A, but they can also be eligible under Criteria B, C, and D.

A good example of how a road may be eligible under B, C and D is a way station. Way stations might be eligible for their association with specific settlement periods in Mississippi, or for their association with an important person under Criterion B. Location, setting and association are the key elements of integrity; way station properties must be highly visible to retain integrity. In addition, they might be eligible under criterion C as an expression a distinctive technological pattern. Under Criterion D, they might be eligible for their information value. Key research issues include way stations as commercial households, world-system relationships, consumerism, technology, and social structure. In addition to road engineering features like bridges, tunnels, culverts, cut and fill landscape features, road bed remnants and other engineering features could be eligible under Criterion C as examples of a pattern of road engineering technology. To be eligible in this case, they need to retain integrity of materials, workmanship and design.

Roadbed remnants are often eligible under Criterion D for their information value. Key research questions include the evolution of transportation, the evolution of regional settlement systems, and road capitalization. Under criterion D, the roadbed needs to retain integrity of association, materials, and workmanship. One thing to note about integrity of materials, is that if the road (during the period of significance) was a paved road, and is now still a paved road, even though the asphalt may have been upgraded and changed over time, the road still retains its integrity because the materials have not changed since that period of significance.

Once it is decided that a linear resource is eligible, there are two ways to nominate your property to the National Register of Historic Places. The first method would be to nominate it as a District. To nominate a linear site as a district it needs to be continuous, with no breaks or missing parts to the main linear feature. This approach is probably best for smaller linear features, like small logging railroads. The other way to nominate a linear site is as a multiple property listing. This approach is used when the linear site is not intact, but rather exists in pieces across an extended area. This approach applies best to major routes of transportation or linear sites that may have stretched across large portions of the state.

In conclusion, linear resources have played an important role in the development of our nation and within the state of Mississippi. With better background research and field methods we hope to improve the preservation and understanding of these resources.

Bibliography

California Office of Historic Preservation (1995) *Instructions for Recording Historical Resources*. National Park Service and Department of the Interior.

Hardesty, Donald L. and Barbara J. Little (2000). *Assessing Site Significance*. AltaMira Press, Walnut Creek.

KSK Architects Planners Historians, Inc. and McCormick Taylor, Inc. (2012). *New Jersey Historic Roadway Design Guidelines*. New Jersey Department of Transportation and Federal Highway Administration New Jersey Historic Preservation Office.

Pennsylvania Historical and Museum Commission. *Researchers Guide for Documenting and Evaluating Railroads*. PDF online:
http://www.portal.state.pa.us/portal/server.pt/community/research_tools/20176/guidelines_for_documenting_and_evaluating_railroads/943356 Accessed 8/28/12

Soulliere, Laura E. (1995) *Historic Roads in the National Park System*. United States Department of the Interior, National Park Service, and Denver Service Center.

Utah Professional Archaeological Council (2008) *Linear Sites: Guidance for Identifying and Recording under Section 106 of the National Historic Preservation Act*.